



**Version 4.0**

***C Cross Compiler User's Guide  
for PowerPC***

PRELIMINARY

**Copyright © COSMIC Software 1995, 2008**

**All Trademarks are the property of their respective owners**



# *Table of Contents*

---

	<b>Preface</b>
Organization of this Manual .....	1
	<b>Chapter 1</b>
	<b>Introduction</b>
Introduction.....	4
Document Conventions.....	4
Typewriter font.....	4
Italics .....	5
[ Brackets ] .....	5
Conventions.....	6
Command Line .....	6
Flags .....	6
Compiler Architecture .....	8
Predefined Symbol.....	9
Linking.....	9
Programming Support Utilities.....	9
Listings.....	10
Optimizations.....	10
	<b>Chapter 2</b>
	<b>Tutorial Introduction</b>
Acia.c, Example file.....	14
Default Compiler Operation .....	16
Compiling and Linking.....	17
Step 1: Compiling.....	17
Step 2: Assembler.....	18
Step 3: Linking .....	19
Step 4: Generating S-Records file .....	21
Linking Your Application.....	23
Generating Automatic Data Initialization.....	24
Specifying Command Line Options .....	27
	<b>Chapter 3</b>
	<b>Programming Environments</b>
Introduction.....	30
Modifying the Runtime Startup .....	31
Description of Runtime Startup Code .....	31
Initializing data in RAM.....	34
The const and volatile Type Qualifiers.....	36

Performing Input/Output in C.....	38
Redefining Sections.....	39
Referencing Absolute Addresses.....	41
Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions.....	43
Inlining with pragmas.....	43
Inlining with <code>_asm</code> .....	44
Writing Interrupt Handlers.....	46
Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors.....	47
Interfacing C to Assembly Language.....	48
Register Usage.....	50
Heap Management Control with the C Compiler.....	51
Modifying The Heap Location.....	53
Data Representation.....	56

## Chapter 4 Using The Compiler

Invoking the Compiler.....	60
Compiler Command Line Options.....	61
File Naming Conventions.....	65
Generating Listings.....	66
Generating an Error File.....	66
Return Status.....	66
Examples.....	66
C Library Support.....	67
How C Library Functions are Packaged.....	67
Inserting Assembler Code Directly.....	67
Linking Libraries with Your Program.....	67
Integer Library Functions.....	67
Common Input/Output Functions.....	68
Functions Implemented as Macros.....	68
Functions Implemented as Builtins.....	68
Including Header Files.....	69
Descriptions of C Library Functions.....	70
Generate inline assembly code.....	71
Abort program execution.....	72
Find absolute value.....	73
Arccosine.....	74
Arcsine.....	75
Arctangent.....	76
Arctangent of $y/x$ .....	77
Convert buffer to double.....	78
Convert buffer to integer.....	79

Convert buffer to long .....	80
Allocate and clear space on the heap .....	81
Round to next higher integer .....	82
Verify the recorded checksum .....	83
Verify the recorded checksum .....	84
Verify the recorded checksum .....	85
Verify the recorded checksum .....	86
Cosine .....	87
Hyperbolic cosine .....	88
Divide with quotient and remainder .....	89
Exit program execution .....	90
Exponential .....	91
Find double absolute value .....	92
Round to next lower integer .....	93
Find double modulus .....	94
Free space on the heap .....	95
Extract fraction from exponent part .....	96
Get character from input stream .....	97
Get a text line from input stream .....	98
Test for alphabetic or numeric character .....	99
Test for alphabetic character .....	100
Test for control character .....	101
Test for digit .....	102
Test for graphic character .....	103
Test for lower-case character .....	104
Test for printing character .....	105
Test for punctuation character .....	106
Integer square root .....	107
Test for whitespace character .....	108
Test for upper-case character .....	109
Test for hexadecimal digit .....	110
Find long absolute value .....	111
Scale double exponent .....	112
Long divide with quotient and remainder .....	113
Natural logarithm .....	114
Common logarithm .....	115
Restore calling environment .....	116
Long integer square root .....	117
Allocate space on the heap .....	118
Test for maximum .....	119
Scan buffer for character .....	120
Compare two buffers for lexical order .....	121
Copy one buffer to another .....	122

Copy one buffer to another.....	123
Propagate fill character throughout buffer.....	124
Test for minimum.....	125
Extract fraction and integer from double.....	126
Raise x to the y power.....	127
Output formatted arguments to stdout.....	128
Put a character to output stream.....	133
Put a text line to output stream.....	134
Generate pseudo-random number.....	135
Reallocate space on the heap.....	136
Allocate new memory.....	137
Read formatted input.....	138
Save calling environment.....	142
Sin.....	144
Hyperbolic sine.....	145
Output arguments formatted to buffer.....	146
Real square root.....	147
Seed pseudo-random number generator.....	148
Read formatted input from a string.....	149
Concatenate strings.....	150
Scan string for first occurrence of character.....	151
Compare two strings for lexical order.....	152
Copy one string to another.....	153
Find the end of a span of characters in a set.....	154
Find length of a string.....	155
Concatenate strings of length n.....	156
Compare two n length strings for lexical order.....	157
Copy n length string.....	158
Find occurrence in string of character in set.....	159
Scan string for last occurrence of character.....	160
Find the end of a span of characters not in set.....	161
Scan string for first occurrence of string.....	162
Convert buffer to double.....	163
Convert buffer to long.....	164
Convert buffer to unsigned long.....	165
Tangent.....	166
Hyperbolic tangent.....	167
Convert character to lower-case if necessary.....	168
Convert character to upper-case if necessary.....	169
Get pointer to next argument in list.....	170
Stop accessing values in an argument list.....	172
Start accessing values in an argument list.....	174

Output arguments formatted to stdout.....	176
Output arguments formatted to buffer.....	177

## Chapter 5 Using The Assembler

Invoking cappc.....	180
Object File.....	183
Listings.....	183
Assembly Language Syntax.....	184
Instructions .....	184
Labels .....	189
Temporary Labels.....	189
Constants .....	191
Expressions.....	192
Macro Instructions.....	193
Conditional Directives.....	196
Sections.....	197
Includes.....	197
Branch Optimization.....	198
Old Syntax .....	198
C Style Directives .....	199
Assembler Directives.....	199
Align the next instruction on a given boundary .....	200
Define the default base for numerical constants.....	201
Turn listing of conditionally excluded code on or off.....	202
Allocate constant(s).....	203
Allocate constant block .....	204
Turn listing of debug directives on or off.....	205
Allocate variable(s) .....	206
Conditional assembly .....	207
Conditional assembly .....	208
Stop the assembly.....	209
End conditional assembly.....	210
End conditional assembly.....	211
End macro definition .....	212
End repeat section.....	213
Give a permanent value to a symbol .....	214
Assemble next byte at the next even address relative to the start of a section.....	215
Generate error message.....	216
Conditional assembly .....	217
Conditional assembly .....	218

Conditional assembly .....	219
Conditional assembly .....	220
Conditional assembly .....	221
Conditional assembly .....	222
Conditional assembly .....	223
Conditional assembly .....	224
Conditional assembly .....	225
Conditional assembly .....	226
Conditional assembly .....	227
Include text from another text file .....	228
Turn on listing during assembly .....	229
Give a text equivalent to a symbol .....	230
Create a new local block .....	231
Define a macro .....	232
Send a message out to STDOUT .....	234
Terminate a macro definition .....	235
Turn on or off listing of macro expansion .....	236
Turn off listing .....	237
Disable pagination in the listing file .....	238
Creates absolute symbols .....	239
Sets the location counter to an offset from the beginning of a section .....	240
Start a new page in the listing file .....	241
Specify the number of lines per pages in the listing file ..	242
Repeat a list of lines a number of times .....	244
Restore saved section .....	246
Terminate a repeat definition .....	247
Save section .....	248
Define a new section .....	249
Give a resetable value to a symbol .....	251
Insert a number of blank lines before the next statement in the listing file .....	252
Place code into a section .....	253
Specify the number of spaces for a tab character in the listing file .....	254
Define default header .....	255
Declare a variable to be visible .....	256
Declare symbol as being defined elsewhere .....	257

## Chapter 6 Using The Linker

Introduction .....	261
--------------------	-----

Overview.....	262
Linker Command File Processing.....	264
Inserting comments in Linker commands .....	265
Linker Options .....	266
Global Command Line Options.....	267
Segment Control Options .....	268
Segment Grouping.....	272
Linking Files on the Command line .....	272
Example.....	272
Include Option .....	273
Example.....	273
Private Region Options.....	274
Symbol Definition Option .....	275
Reserve Space Option.....	276
Section Relocation .....	277
Address Specification .....	277
Overlapping Control.....	278
Setting Bias and Offset .....	278
Setting the Bias.....	278
Setting the Offset.....	278
Using Default Placement.....	278
Linking Objects.....	279
Linking Library Objects.....	279
Library Order.....	280
Libraries Setup Search Paths .....	281
Automatic Data Initialization.....	282
Descriptor Format.....	282
Checksum Computation.....	284
DEFs and REFs.....	286
Special Topics.....	287
Private Name Regions .....	287
Renaming Symbols.....	287
Absolute Symbol Tables.....	291
Description of The Map File.....	292
Return Value .....	293
Linker Command Line Examples .....	294

## Chapter 7

### Debugging Support

Generating Debugging Information.....	298
Generating Line Number Information.....	298
Generating Data Object Information .....	298

The cprd Utility .....	300
Command Line Options .....	300
Examples .....	301
The clst utility .....	302
Command Line Options .....	302

## **Chapter 8**

### **Programming Support**

The chex Utility .....	306
Command Line Options .....	306
Return Status .....	308
Examples .....	308
The clabs Utility .....	310
Command Line Options .....	310
Return Status .....	311
Examples .....	311
The clib Utility .....	313
Command Line Options .....	313
Return Status .....	314
Examples .....	314
The cobj Utility .....	316
Command Line Options .....	316
Return Status .....	317
Examples .....	317
The cvdwarf Utility .....	318
Command Line Options .....	318
Return Status .....	320
Examples .....	320

## **Chapter A**

### **Compiler Error Messages**

Parser (cpppe) Error Messages .....	322
Code Generator (cgppc) Error Messages .....	336
Assembler (cappc) Error Messages .....	337
Linker (clnk) Error Messages .....	340

## **Chapter B**

### **Modifying Compiler Operation**

The Configuration File .....	344
Changing the Default Options .....	345
Creating Your Own Options .....	345
Example .....	346

---

**Chapter C**  
**PowerPC Machine Library**

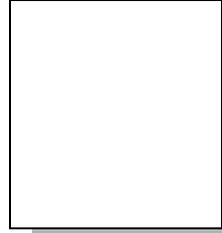
Function Listing..... 347

**Chapter D**  
**Compiler Passes**

The cppc Parser..... 350  
    Command Line Options ..... 350  
    Extra verifications ..... 356  
    Return Status ..... 357  
    Example..... 357  
The cgpc Code Generator ..... 358  
    Command Line Options ..... 358  
    Return Status ..... 359  
    Example..... 359  
The coppc Assembly Language Optimizer..... 360  
    Command Line Options ..... 360  
    Disabling Optimization ..... 361  
    Return Status ..... 361  
    Example..... 361

PRELIMINARY





# Preface

---

The *Cross Compiler User's Guide for PowerPC* is a reference guide for programmers writing C programs for PowerPC microcontroller environments. It provides an overview of how the cross compiler works, and explains how to compile, assemble, link and debug programs. It also describes the programming support utilities included with the cross compiler and provides tutorial and reference information to help you configure executable images to meet specific requirements. This manual assumes that you are familiar with your host operating system and with your specific target environment.

## Organization of this Manual

This manual is divided into eight chapters and four appendixes.

**Chapter 1**, “[Introduction](#)”, describes the basic organization of the C compiler and programming support utilities.

**Chapter 2**, “[Tutorial Introduction](#)”, is a series of examples that demonstrates how to compile, assemble and link a simple C program.

**Chapter 3**, “[Programming Environments](#)”, explains how to use the features of C for PowerPC to meet the requirements of your particular application. It explains how to create a runtime startup for your application, and how to write C routines that perform special tasks such as: serial I/O, direct references to hardware addresses, interrupt handling, and assembly language calls.

**Chapter 4**, “[Using The Compiler](#)”, describes the compiler options. This chapter also describes the functions in the C runtime library.

**Chapter 5**, “[Using The Assembler](#)”, describes the PowerPC assembler and its options. It explains the rules that your assembly language source must follow, and it documents all the directives supported by the assembler.

**Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”, describes the linker and its options. This chapter describes in detail all the features of the linker and their use.

**Chapter 7**, “[Debugging Support](#)”, describes the support available for COSMIC's C source level cross debugger and for other debuggers or in-circuit emulators.

**Chapter 8**, “[Programming Support](#)”, describes the programming support utilities. Examples of how to use these utilities are also included.

**Appendix A**, “[Compiler Error Messages](#)”, is a list of compile time error messages that the C compiler may generate.

**Appendix B**, “[Modifying Compiler Operation](#)”, describes the “configuration file” that serves as default behaviour to the C compiler.

**Appendix C**, “[PowerPC Machine Library](#)”, describes the assembly language routines that provide support for the C runtime library.

**Appendix D**, “[Compiler Passes](#)”, describes the specifics of the parser, code generator and assembly language optimizer and the command line options that each accepts.

This manual also contains an Index.

# Introduction

---

This chapter explains how the compiler operates. It also provides a basic understanding of the compiler architecture. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Introduction
- Document Conventions
- Compiler Architecture
- Predefined Symbol
- Linking
- Programming Support Utilities
- Listings
- Optimizations

## Introduction

The C cross compiler targeting the PowerPC microcontroller reads C source files, assembly language source files, and object code files, and produces an executable file. You can request listings that show your C source interspersed with the assembly language code and object code that the compiler generates. You can also request that the compiler generate an object module that contains debugging information that can be used by COSMIC's C source level cross debugger or by other debuggers or in-circuit emulators.

You begin compilation by invoking the **cxppc** compiler driver with the specific options you need and the files to be compiled.

## Document Conventions

In this documentation set, we use a number of styles and typefaces to demonstrate the syntax of various commands and to show sample text you might type at a terminal or observe in a file. The following is a list of these conventions.

### *Typewriter font*

Used for user input/screen output. Typewriter (or courier) font is used in the text and in examples to represent what you might type at a terminal: command names, directives, switches, literal filenames, or any other text which must be typed exactly as shown. It is also used in other examples to represent what you might see on a screen or in a printed listing and to denote executables.

To distinguish it from other examples or listings, input from the user will appear in a shaded box throughout the text. Output to the terminal or to a file will appear in a line box.

For example, if you were instructed to type the compiler command that generates debugging information, it would appear as:

```
cxppc +debug acia.c
```

Typewriter font enclosed in a shaded box indicates that this line is entered by the user at the terminal.

If, however, the text included a partial listing of the file *acia.c* ‘an example of text from a file or from output to the terminal’ then typewriter font would still be used, but would be enclosed in a line box:

```
/* defines the ACIA as a structure */
struct acia {
    char status;
    char data;
} acia @0x6000;
```

### NOTE

*Due to the page width limitations of this manual, a single invocation line may be represented as two or more lines. You should, however, type the invocation as one line unless otherwise directed.*

### Italics

Used for value substitution. *Italic* type indicates categories of items for which you must substitute appropriate values, such as arguments or hypothetical filenames. For example, if the text was demonstrating a hypothetical command line to compile and generate debugging information for any file, it might appear as:

```
cxppc +debug file.c
```

In this example, `cxppc +debug file.c` is shown in typewriter font because it must be typed exactly as shown. Because the filename must be specified by the user, however, *file* is shown in italics.

### [ Brackets ]

Items enclosed in brackets are optional. For example, the line:

```
[ options ]
```

means that zero or more options may be specified because options appears in brackets. Conversely, the line:

```
options
```

means that one or more options must be specified because options is not enclosed by brackets.

As another example, the line:

```
file1.[o|ppc]
```

means that one file with the extension `.o` or `.ppc` may be specified, and the line:

```
file1 [ file2 . . . ]
```

means that additional files may be specified.

## Conventions

All the compiler utilities share the same optional arguments syntax. They are invoked by typing a command line.

## Command Line

A command line is generally composed of three major parts:

```
program_name [<flags>] <files>
```

where *<program\_name>* is the name of the program to run, *<flags>* an optional series of flags, and *<files>* a series of files. Each element of a command line is usually a string separated by whitespace from all the others.

## Flags

Flags are used to select options or specify parameters. Options are recognized by their first character, which is always a `'-'` or a `'+'`, followed by the name of the flag (usually a single letter). Some flags are simply **yes** or **no** indicators, but some must be followed by a value or some additional information. The value, if required, may be a character string, a single character, or an integer. The flags may be given in any order, and two or more may be combined in the same argument, so long as the second flag can't be mistaken for a value that goes with the previous one.

It is possible for each utility to display a list of accepted options by specifying the **-help** option. Each option will be displayed alphabetically on a separate line with its name and a brief description. If an option requires additional information, then the type of information is

indicated by one of the following code, displayed immediately after the option name:

Code	Type of information
*	character string
#	short integer
##	long integer
?	single character

If the code is immediately followed by the character '>', the option may be specified more than once with different values. In that case, the option name must be repeated for every specification.

For example, the options of the **chex** utility are:

```

chex [options] file
-a##      absolute file start address
-b##      address bias
-e##      entry point address
-f?       output format
-h        suppress header
+h*       specify header string
-m#       maximum data bytes per line
-n*>      output only named segments
-o*       output file name
-p        use paged address format
-pa       use paged address for data
-pl##     page numbers for linear mapping
-pn       use paged address in bank only
-pp       use paged address with mapping
-s        output increasing addresses
-w        output word addresses
-x*       exclude named segment

```

**chex** accepts the following distinct flags:

Flag	Function
<b>-a</b>	accept a long integer value
<b>-b</b>	accept a long integer value
<b>-e</b>	accept a long integer value
<b>-f</b>	accept a single character
<b>-h</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>+h</b>	accept a character string
<b>-m</b>	accept a short integer value
<b>-n</b>	accept a character string and may be repeated
<b>-o</b>	accept a character string
<b>-p</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>-pl</b>	accept a long integer value
<b>-pn</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>-pp</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>-s</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>-w</b>	simply a flag indicator
<b>-x</b>	accept a character string and may be repeated

## Compiler Architecture

The C compiler consists of several programs that work together to translate your C source files to executable files and listings. **cppc** controls the operation of these programs automatically, using the options you specify, and runs the programs described below in the order listed:

**cpppc** - the C preprocessor and language parser. *cpppc* expands directives in your C source and parses the resulting text.

**cgppc** - the code generator. *cgppc* accepts the output of *cpppc* and generates assembly language statements.

**coppc** - the assembly language optimizer. *coppc* optimizes the assembly language code that *cgppc* generates.

**cappc** - the assembler. *cappc* converts the assembly language output of *coppc* to a relocatable object module.

## Predefined Symbol

The COSMIC compiler defines the `__CSMC__` preprocessor symbol. It expands to a numerical value whose each bit indicates if a specific option has been activated:

<b>bit 2</b>	set if unsigned char option specified ( <b>-pu</b> )
<b>bit 4</b>	set if reverse bitfield option specified ( <b>+rev</b> )
<b>bit 5</b>	set if no enum optimization specified ( <b>-pne</b> )

## Linking

**clnk** combines all the object modules that make up your program with the appropriate modules from the C library. You can also build your own libraries and have the linker select files from them as well. The linker generates an executable file which, after further processing with the *chex* utility, can be downloaded and run on your target system. If you specify debugging options when you invoke **cxppc**, the compiler will generate a file that contains debugging information. You can then use the COSMIC's debugger to debug your code.

## Programming Support Utilities

Once object files are produced, you run **clnk** (the linker) to produce an executable image for your target system; you can use the programming support utilities to inspect the executable.

**chex** - absolute hex file generator. *chex* translates executable images produced by the linker into hexadecimal interchange formats, for use

with in-circuit emulators and PROM programmers. *chex* produces the following formats:

- Motorola S-record format
- standard Intel hex format

**clabs** - absolute listing utility. *clabs* translates relocatable listings produced by the assembler by replacing all relocatable information by absolute information. This utility must to be used only after the linker.

**clib** - build and maintain object module libraries. *clib* allows you to collect related files into a single named library file for convenient storage. You use it to build and maintain object module libraries in standard library format.

**cobj** - object module inspector. *cobj* allows you to examine standard format executable and relocatable object files for symbol table information and to determine their size and configuration.

## Listings

Several options for listings are available. If you request no listings, then error messages from the compiler are directed to your terminal, but no additional information is provided. Each error is labelled with the C source file name and line number where the error was detected.

If you request an assembly language and object code listing with interspersed C source, the compiler merges the C source as comments among the assembly language statements and lines of object code that it generates. Unless you specify otherwise, the error messages are still written to your terminal. Your listing is the listing output from the assembler.

## Optimizations

The C cross compiler performs a number of compile time and optimizations that help make your application smaller and faster:

- The compiler will perform arithmetic operations in 8-bit precision if the operands are 8-bit.

- The compiler eliminates unreachable code.
- Branch shortening logic chooses the smallest possible jump/branch instructions. Jumps to jumps and jumps over jumps are eliminated as well.
- Integer and float constant expressions are folded at compile time.
- Redundant load and store operations are removed.
- **enum** is large enough to represent all of its declared values, each of which is given a name. The names of **enum** values occupy the same space as type definitions, functions and object names. The compiler provides the ability to declare an **enum** using the smallest type char, int or long:
- The compiler performs multiplication by powers of two as faster shift instructions.
- An optimized switch statement produces combinations of tests and branches, jump tables for closely spaced case labels, a scan table for a small group of loosely spaced case labels, or a sorted table for an efficient search.
- The functions in the C library are packaged in three separate libraries; one of them is built without floating point support. If your application does not perform floating point calculations, you can decrease its size and increase its runtime efficiency by linking with the non-floating-point version of the modules needed.

PowerPC For information on using the compiler, see [Chapter 4](#).

For information on using the assembler, see [Chapter 5](#).

For information on using the linker, see [Chapter 6](#).

For information on debugging support, see [Chapter 7](#).

For information on using the programming utilities, see [Chapter 8](#).

For information on the compiler passes, see [Appendix D](#).



# Tutorial Introduction

---

This chapter will demonstrate, step by step, how to compile, assemble and link the example program `acia.c`, which is included on your distribution media. Although this tutorial cannot show all the topics relevant to the COSMIC tools, it will demonstrate the basics of using the compiler for the most common applications.

In this tutorial you will find information on the following topics:

- [Default Compiler Operation](#)
- [Compiling and Linking](#)
- [Linking Your Application](#)
- [Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)
- [Specifying Command Line Options](#)

## Acia.c, Example file

The following is a listing of *acia.c*. This C source file is copied during the installation of the compiler:

```

/*      EXAMPLE PROGRAM WITH INTERRUPT HANDLING
 *      Copyright (c) 2008 by COSMIC Software
 *
 */
#include <io5516.h>

#define SIZE512                /* buffer size */
#define TDRE0x8000            /* transmit ready bit */

/*      Authorize interrupts.
 */
#define cli()_asm("nop")

/*      Some variables.
 */
char buffer[SIZE];/* reception buffer */
char *ptlec;      /* read pointer */
char * volatile ptecr;/* write pointer */

/*      Character reception.
 *      Loops until a character is received.
 */
int getch(void)
{
    int c;                /* character to be returned */

    while (ptlec == ptecr) /* equal pointers => loop */
        ;
    c = *ptlec++;        /* get the received char */
    if (ptlec >= &buffer[SIZE])/* put in in buffer */
        ptlec = buffer;
    return (c);
}

/*      Send a char to the SCI 0.
 */
void outch(int c)
{
    while (!(SCI1_SCISR & TDRE))/* wait for READY */
        ;
    SCI1_SCIDR = c;        /* send it */
}

```

```
/* Character reception routine.
 * This routine is called on interrupt.
 * It puts the received char in the buffer.
 */
@interrupt void recept(void)
{
    SCI1_SCISR; /* clear interrupt */
    *ptecr++ = SCI1_SCIDR; /* get the char */
    if (ptecr >= &buffer[SIZE]) /* put it in buffer */
        ptecr = buffer;
}

/* Main program.
 * Sets up the SCI and starts an infinite
 * loop of receive transmit.
 */
void main(void)
{
    ptecr = ptlec = buffer; /* initialize pointers */
    GPIOB_PER &= ~0x0c; /* RX/TX pins */
    SIM_GPS |= 0x30; /* select SCI1 */
    SCI1_SCISR; /* read */
    SCI1_SCIDR; /* registers */
    SCI1_SCIBR = 26; /* speed 9600 @8MHz */
    SCI1_SCICR = 0x2c; /* parameters for interrupt */
    IPR5 |= 0x0828; /* priority 1 */
    cli(); /* authorize interrupts */
    for (;;) /* loop */
        outch(getch()); /* get and put a char */
}
```

## Default Compiler Operation

By default, the compiler compiles and assembles your program. You may then link object files using **cnk** to create an executable program.

As it processes the command line, **cxppc** echoes the name of each input file to the standard output file (your terminal screen by default). You can change the amount of information the compiler sends to your terminal screen using command line options, as described later.

According to the options you will use, the following files, recognized by the COSMIC naming conventions, will be generated:

<b>file.s</b>	Assembler source module
<b>file.o</b>	Relocatable object module
<b>file.ppc</b>	input ( <i>e.g.</i> libraries) or output ( <i>e.g.</i> absolute executable) file for the linker

## Compiling and Linking

To compile and assemble *acia.c* using default options, type:

```
cxppc acia.c
```

The compiler writes the name of the input file it processes:

```
acia.c:
```

The result of the compilation process is an object module named *acia.o* produced by the assembler. We will, now, show you how to use the different components.

### Step 1: Compiling

The first step consists in compiling the C source file and producing an assembly language file named *acia.s*.

```
cxppc -s acia.c
```

The **-s** option directs **cxppc** to stop after having produced the assembly file *acia.s*. You can then edit this file with your favourite editor. You can also visualize it with the appropriate system command (*type, cat, more,...*). For example under MS/DOS you would type:

```
type acia.s
```

If you wish to get an interspersed C and assembly language file, you should type:

```
cxppc -l acia.c
```

The **-l** option directs the compiler to produce an assembly language file with C source line interspersed in it. Please note that the C source lines are commented in the assembly language file: they start with ‘;’.

As you use the C compiler, you may find it useful to see the various actions taken by the compiler and to verify the options you selected.

The **-v** option, known as verbose mode, instructs the C compiler to display all of its actions. For example if you type:

```
cxppc -v -s acia.c
```

the display will look like something similar to the following:

```
acia.c:
  cppc -o \2.cx1 -i\cx\hppc -u -b -m0x3030 acia.c
  cgppc -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
  coppc -o acia.s \2.cx2
```

The compiler runs each pass:

<b>cppc</b>	the C parser
<b>cgppc</b>	the assembly code generator
<b>coppc</b>	the optimizer

For more information, see **Appendix D**, “[Compiler Passes](#)”

## Step 2: Assembler

The second step of the compilation is to assemble the code previously produced. The relocatable object file produced is **acia.o**.

```
cxppc acia.s
```

or

```
cappc -i\cx\hppc acia.s
```

if you want to use directly the macro cross assembler.

The cross assembler can provide, when necessary, listings, symbol table, cross reference and more. The following command will generate a listing file named *acia.ls* that will also contain a cross reference:

```
cappc -c -l acia.s
```

For more information, see **Chapter 5**, “[Using The Assembler](#)”.

### Step 3: Linking

This step consists in linking relocatable files, also referred to as object modules, produced by the compiler or by the assembler (<files>.o) into an absolute executable file: **acia.ppc** in our example. Code and data sections will be located at absolute memory addresses. The linker is used with a command file (**acia.lkf** in this example).

An application that uses one or more object module(s) may require several sections (code, data, interrupt vectors, etc.,...) located at different addresses. Each object module contains several sections. The compiler creates the following sections:

Type	Description
<b>.text</b>	code (or program) section (e.g. ROM))
<b>.vtext</b>	code (or program) section (e.g. ROM)), VLE mode
<b>.const</b>	constant and literal data (e.g. ROM)
<b>.data</b>	all static initialized data (e.g. RAM)
<b>.bss</b>	all non initialized static data (e.g. RAM)
<b>.sdata</b>	initialized variables in short range (R2 based)
<b>.sbss</b>	uninitialized variables in short range (R2 based)

In our example, and in the test file provided with the compiler, the *acia.lkf* file contains the following information:

```

line 1 # link command file for test program
line 2 #Copyright (c) 2008 by COSMIC Software
line 3
line 4 +seg .const -b 0x40000000 -m 0x7000 -n .const# code
line 5 +seg .vtext -a .const -n .text
line 6 +seg .sdata -b0x10000 -m0x8000 -n .sdata# data
line 7 +seg .sbss -a .sdata -n .sbss# uninitialized data
line 8 +def __sdata=@.sdata # start address of data
line 9 +def __sbss=@.sbss # start address of bss
line 10 crtsv.ppc # startup routine
line 11 acia.o # application program
line 12 libiv.ppc # integer library
line 13 libmv.ppc # machine library
line 14 +def __memory=@.sbss # symbol used by library
line 15 +def __stack=0x20000 # stack pointer initial value

```

You can create your own link command file by modifying the one provided with the compiler.

Here is the explanation of the lines in *acia.lkf*:

**lines 1 to 3:** These are comment lines. Each line can include comments. They must be prefixed by the “#” character.

**line 4:** `+seg .const -b0x40000000 -m 0x7000 -n .const` creates a const segment located at `0x40000000` (hex address) which is named `.const`

**line 5:** `+seg .vtext -a.const` creates a text (code) segment located after the previous const segment.

**line 6:** `+seg .sdata -b0x10000 -m0x8000 -n .sdata` creates a word data segment located at `0x10000`, named `.sdata`.

**line 7:** `+seg .sbss -a .sdata -n .sbss` creates an uninitialized data segment located after the `.sdata` segment, named `.sbss`.

**line 8:** `+def __sdata=@.sdata` defines a symbol `__sdata` equal to the value of the current address in the `.sdata` segment. This is used to get the address of the start of the `sdata`.

**line 9:** `+def __sbss=@.sbss` defines a symbol `__sbss` equal to the value of the current address in the `.sbss` segment. This is used to get the address of the start of the `bss`. The symbol `__sbss` is used by the startup routine to reset the `bss`.

**line 10:** `crt0.o` runtime startup code. It will be located at `0x40000000`.

**line 11:** `acia.o`, the file that constitutes your application. It follows the startup routine for code and data

**line 12:** `libi.ppc` the integer library to resolve references

**line 13:** `libm.ppc` the machine library to resolve references

**line 14: `+def __memory=@.sbss`** defines a symbol `__memory` equal to the value of the current address in the `.sbss` segment. This is used to get the address of the end of the `bss`. The symbol `__memory` is used by the startup routine to reset the `sbss`.

**line 15: `+def __stack=0x20000`** defines a symbol `__stack` equal to the absolute value `20000` (hex value). The symbol `__stack` is used by the startup routine to initialize the stack pointer.

By default and in our example, the `.bss` segment follows the `.data` segment.

The `crt0.o` file contains the runtime startup that performs the following operations:

- initialize the `bss`, if any
- initialize the stack pointer
- call `main()` or any other chosen entry point.

For more information, see “[Modifying the Runtime Startup](#)” in **Chapter 3**, “*Programming Environments*”.

After you have modified the linker command file, you can link by typing:

```
clnk -o acia.ppc acia.lkf
```

For more information, see **Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”

#### Step 4: Generating S-Records file

Although `acia.ppc` is an executable image, it may not be in the correct format to be loaded on your target. Use the `chex` utility to translate the format produced by the linker into standard formats. To translate `acia.ppc` to *Motorola standard S-record* format:

```
chex acia.ppc > acia.hex
```

or

```
chex -o acia.hex acia.ppc
```

**acia.hex** is now an executable image in *Motorola S-record* format and is ready to be loaded in your target system.

For more information, see “[The chex Utility](#)” in **Chapter 8**.

PRELIMINARY

## Linking Your Application

You can create as many *vtext*, *sdata* and *sbss* segments as your application requires. For example, assume we have one *sbss*, one *sdata* and one *vtext* segments. Our link command file will look like:

```
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -m 0x7000 -n .const
+seg .vtext -a .const -n .text
+seg .sdata -b0x10000 -m0x8000 -n .sdata
+seg .sbss -a .sdata -n .sbss
+def __sdata=@.sdata
+def __sbss=@.sbss
crtsv.o
acia.o
module1.o
c:/cosmic/cxppc/lib/libi/libiv.ppc
c:/cosmic/cxppc/lib/libm/libmv.ppc
+def __memory=@.sbss
+def __stack=0x20000
```

In this example the linker will locate and merge *crtsv.o*, *acia.o* and *module1.o* in a *vtext* segment at **0x40000000**, a *sdata* segment at **0x10000**. The libraries will be also merged.

For more information about the linker, see **Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”.

## Generating Automatic Data Initialization

Usually, in embedded applications, your program must reside in ROM.

This is not an issue when your application contains code and read-only data (such as string or const variables). All you have to do is burn a PROM with the correct values and plug it into your application board.

The problem comes up when your application uses initial data values that you have defined with initialized static data. These static data values must reside in RAM.

There are two types of static data initializations:

- 1) data that is explicitly initialized to a non-zero value:

```
char var1 = 25;
```

which is generated into the **.data** section and

- 2) data that is explicitly initialized to zero or left uninitialized:

```
char var2;
```

which is generated into the **.bss** section.

The first method to ensure that these values are correct consists in adding code in your application that reinitializes them from a copy that you have created and located in ROM, at each restart of the application.

The second method is to use the **crtsi.ppc** start-up file:

- 1) that defines a symbol that will force the linker to create a copy of the initialized RAM in ROM
- 2) and that will do the copy from ROM to RAM

The following link file demonstrates how to achieve automatic data initialization.

```
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -n.const # program start address  
+seg .vtext -a .const -n.vtext # constant follow code
```

```
+seg .data -b0x10000          # data start address
\cx\lib\crtsi.ppc          # startup with auto-init
acia.o                       # main program
module1.o                    # module program
\cx\lib\libi.ppc             # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.ppc             # machine library
+def __memory=@.bss          # symbol used by library
+def __stack=0x20000         # stack pointer initial value
```

In the above example, the *vtext* segment is located at address **0x4000000**, the *data* segment is located at address **0x10000**, immediately followed by the *bss* segment that contains uninitialized data. The copy of the initialized data in ROM will follow the descriptor created by the linker after the code segment.

In case of multiple code and data segments, a link command file could be:

```
+seg .const -b 0x4000000 -n.const# program start address
+seg .vtext -a .const -n.vtext# constant follow code
\cx\lib\crtsi.ppc          # startup with auto-init
acia.o                       # main program
module1.o                    # module program
+seg .vtext -b0x50000000     # new code segment
module2.o                    # module program
module3.o                    # module program
\cx\lib\libi.ppc             # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.ppc             # machine library
+seg .const -b 0x0          # vectors start address
vector.o                     # interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss         # symbol used by startup
+def __stack=0x20000        # stack pointer initial value
```

OR

```
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -n .const# program start address
+seg .vtext -a .const -n.vtext# constant follow code
+seg .data -b0x1000         # data start address
\cx\lib\crtsi.ppc          # startup with auto-init
acia.o                       # main program
module1.o                    # module program
+seg .text -b0x50000000 -it  # sets the section attribute
module2.o                    # module program
module3.o                    # module program
\cx\lib\libi.ppc             # C library (if needed)
```

```
\cx\lib\libm.ppc          # machine library
+seg .const -b 0x0        # vectors start address
vector.o                  # interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss      # symbol used by startup
+def __stack=0x20000     # stack pointer initial value
```

In the first case, the initialized data will be located after the first code segment. In the second case, the **-it** option instructs the linker to locate the initialized data after the segment marked with this flag. The initialized data will be located after the second code segment located at address 0x50000000.

For more information, see “[Initializing data in RAM](#)” in **Chapter 3** and “[Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## Specifying Command Line Options

You specify command line options to **cxppc** to control the compilation process.

To compile and produce a relocatable file named *acia.o*, type:

```
cxppc acia.c
```

The **-v** option instructs the compiler driver to echo the name and options of each program it calls. The **-l** option instructs the compiler driver to create a mixed listing of C code and assembly language code in the file *acia.ls*.

To perform the operations described above, enter the command:

```
cxppc -v -l acia.c
```

When the compiler exits, the following files are left in your current directory:

- the C source file **acia.c**
- the C and assembly language listing **acia.ls**
- the object module **acia.o**

It is possible to locate listings and object files in specified directories if they are different from the current one, by using respectively the **-cl** and **-co** options:

```
cxppc -cl\mylist -co\myobj -l acia.c
```

This command will compile the *acia.c* file, create a listing named *acia.ls* in the *\mylist* directory and an object file named *acia.o* in the *\myobj* directory.

**cxppc** allows you to compile more than one file. The input files can be C source files or assembly source files. You can also mix all of these files.

If your application is composed with the following files: two C source files and one assembly source file, you would type:

```
cxppc -v start.s acia.c getchar.c
```

This command will assemble the *start.s* file, and compile the two C source files.

See **Chapter 4**, “[Using The Compiler](#)” for information on these and other command line options.

# Programming Environments

---

This chapter explains how to use the COSMIC program development system to perform special tasks required by various PowerPC applications.

## Introduction

The PowerPC COSMIC compiler is an ANSI C compiler that offers several extensions which support special requirements of embedded systems programmers. This chapter provides details about:

- [Modifying the Runtime Startup](#)
- [Initializing data in RAM](#)
- [The const and volatile Type Qualifiers](#)
- [Performing Input/Output in C](#)
- [Redefining Sections](#)
- [Referencing Absolute Addresses](#)
- [Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions](#)
- [Writing Interrupt Handlers](#)
- [Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors](#)
- [Interfacing C to Assembly Language](#)
- [Register Usage](#)
- [Heap Management Control with the C Compiler](#)
- [Data Representation](#)

## Modifying the Runtime Startup

The runtime startup module performs many important functions to establish a runtime environment for C. The runtime startup file included with the standard distribution provides the following:

- Initialization of the **bss** section if any,
- ROM into RAM copy if required,
- Initialization of the stack pointer,
- `_main` or other program entry point call, and
- An exit sequence to return from the C environment. Most users must modify the exit sequence provided to meet the needs of their specific execution environment.

The following is a listing of the standard runtime startup file `crt0.ppc` included on your distribution media. It does not perform automatic data initialization. A special startup program is provided, `crt0i.ppc`, which is used instead of `crt0.ppc` when you need automatic data initialization. The runtime startup file can be placed anywhere in memory. Usually, the startup will be “linked” with the **RESET** interrupt, and the startup file may be at any convenient location.

### Description of Runtime Startup Code

```

1 ; SAMPLE C STARTUP CODE
2 ; Copyright (c) 2008 by COSMIC Software
3 ;
4 xdef _exit, __stext
5 xref _main, __sdata, __sbss, __memory, __stack
6 ;
7 ifndef VLE
8 vle on
9 ;
10 .vtext: section .text
11 endif
12 ;
13 __stext:
14 nop ; for address alignment
15 bl next ; get addresses
16 dc.l __sdata

```

```

17     dc.l   __sbss-4
18     dc.l   __memory-4
19     dc.l   __stack
20 next:
21     mflr  r3
22     lwz   r4,4(r3)           ; get start of bss
23     lwz   r5,8(r3)           ; get end of bss
24     sub.  r5,r4              ; byte size
25     beq   init              ; empty, skip
26     addi  r5,3               ; round up
27     srwi  r5,2              ; word size
28     mtctr r5                ; set counter
29     li    r0,0              ; to clear the bss
30 zbcl:
31     stwu  r0,4(r4)           ; clear memory
32     bdnz zbcl              ; count down and loop back
33 init:
34     lwz   r1,12(r3)          ; initialize SP
35     lwz   r2,0(r3)          ; initialize DP
36     bl    _main              ; execute main
37 _exit:
38     b     _exit              ; stay here
39 ;
40     end

```

**\_main** is the entry point into the user C program.

**\_memory** is an external symbol defined by the linker as the end of the **.bss** section. The start of the *bss* section is marked by the local symbol **\_sbss**.

**\_stack** is an external symbol defined by the linker as an absolute value.

**Lines 21 to 32** reset the *bss* section.

**Lines 34** set the stack pointer. You may have to modify them to meet the needs of your application.

**Lines 35** set the data pointer. You may have to modify them to meet the needs of your application.

**Line 36** calls *main()* in the user's C program.

**Lines 37 to 38** trap a return from *main()*. If your application must return to a monitor, for example, you must modify this line.

PRELIMINARY

## Initializing data in RAM

If you have initialized static variables, which are located in **RAM**, you need to perform their initialization before you start your C program. The **clnk** linker will take care of that: it moves the initialized data segments after the **first** text segment, or the one you have selected with the **-it** option, and creates a descriptor giving the starting address, destination and size of each segment.

The table thus created and the copy of the **RAM** are located in **ROM** by the linker, and used to do the initialization. An example of how to do this is provided in the **crtsi.s** file located in the headers subdirectory.

```

;      SAMPLE C STARTUP CODE WITH DATA INITIALIZATION
;      Copyright (c) 2008 by COSMIC Software
;
;      xdef  __exit, __stext
;      xref  __main, __memory, __sdata, __sbss, __stack,
__idesc__
;
#ifdef VLE
    vle    on
;
.vtext:section.text
endif
;
__stext:
    nop                                ; for address alignment
    bl    next                          ; get addresses
    dc.l  __sdata
    dc.l  __sbss-4
    dc.l  __memory-4
    dc.l  __stack
    dc.l  __idesc__
next:
    mflr  r3
    lwz   r4,16(r3) ; descriptor address
    lwz   r5,0(r4)  ; first image address
    subi  r5,1      ; adjust address
dbcl:
    lwzu  r0,4(r4) ; get flag word
    cmpi  r0,0     ; test flag
    beq   zbss     ; end continue
    lwzu  r6,4(r4) ; ram start address
    lwzu  r0,4(r4) ; code end address

```

```

        subi   r0,1           ; adjust address
        sub    r0,r5          ; block size
        mtctr  r0
        subi   r6,1           ; adjust address
cbcl:
        lbzu   r0,1(r5)       ; get and
        stbu   r0,1(r6)       ; store
        bdnz   cbcl           ; count down and loop back
        b      dbcl           ; next segment
zsss:
        lwz    r4,4(r3)        ; get start of bss
        lwz    r5,8(r3)        ; get end of bss
        sub.   r5,r4           ; byte size
        beq    init           ; empty, skip
        addi   r5,3           ; round up
        srwi   r5,2           ; word size
        mtctr  r5             ; set counter
zbc1:
        stwu   r0,4(r4)        ; clear memory
        bdnz   zbc1           ; count down and loop back
init:
        lwz    r1,12(r3)       ; initialize SP
        lwz    r2,0(r3)        ; initialize DP
        bl     _main           ; execute main
_exit:
        b      _exit          ; stay here
;
        end

```

*crti.s* performs the same function as described with the *crti.s*, but with one additional step. Lines (marked in bold) in *crti.s* include code to copy the contents of initialized static data, which has been placed in the text section by the linker, to the desired location in RAM.

For more information, see “[Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 2** and “[Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## The const and volatile Type Qualifiers

You can add the type qualifiers **const** and **volatile** to any base type or pointer type attribute.

*Volatile* types are useful for declaring data objects that appear to be in conventional storage but are actually represented in machine registers with special properties. You use the type qualifier *volatile* to declare memory mapped input/output control registers, shared data objects, and data objects accessed by signal handlers. The compiler will not optimize references to *volatile* data.

An expression that stores a value in a data object of *volatile* type stores the value immediately. An expression that accesses a value in a data object of *volatile* type obtains the stored value for each access. Your program will not reuse the value accessed earlier from a data object of *volatile* type.

### NOTE

*The **volatile** keyword must be used for any data object (variables) that can be modified outside of the normal flow of the function. Without the volatile keyword, all data objects are subject to normal redundant code removal optimizations. Volatile MUST be used for the following conditions:*

*All data objects or variables associated with a memory mapped hardware register e.g. **volatile unsigned short SCRO @0xf352;***

*All global variable that can be modified (written to) by an interrupt service routine either directly or indirectly. e.g. a global variable used as a counter in an interrupt service routine.*

You use **const** to declare data objects whose stored values you do not intend to alter during execution of your program. You can therefore place data objects of **const** type in ROM or in write protected program segments. The cross compiler generates an error message if it encounters an expression that alters the value stored in a **const** data object.

If you declare a static data object of *const* type at either file level or at block level, you may specify its stored value by writing a data initializer. The compiler determines its stored value from its data initializer before program startup, and the stored value continues to exist unchanged until program termination. If you specify no data initializer, the stored value is zero. If you declare a data object of *const* type at argument level, you tell the compiler that your program will not alter the value stored in that argument data object by the function call. If you declare a data object of *const* type and dynamic lifetime at block level, you must specify its stored value by writing a data initializer. If you specify no data initializer, the stored value is indeterminate.

You may specify *const* and *volatile* together, in either order. A *const volatile* data object could be a Read-only status register, or a variable whose value may be set by another program.

Examples of data objects declared with type qualifiers are:

```
char * const x;      /* const pointer to char */
int * volatile y;   /* volatile pointer to int */
const float pi = 355.0 / 113.0; /* pi is never changed */
```

## Performing Input/Output in C

You perform input and output in C by using the C library functions *getchar*, *gets*, *printf*, *putchar*, *puts* and *sprintf*. They are described in chapter 4.

The C source code for these and all other C library functions is included with the distribution, so that you can modify them to meet your specific needs. Note that all input/output performed by C library functions is supported by underlying calls to *getchar* and *putchar*. These two functions provide access to all input/output library functions. The library is built in such a way so that you need only modify *getchar* and *putchar*; the rest of the library is independent of the runtime environment.

Function definitions for *getchar* and *putchar* are:

```
char getchar(void);
char putchar(char c);
```

## Redefining Sections

The compiler uses by default predefined sections to output the various component of a C program. The default sections are:

Section	Description
<b>.text</b>	executable code
<b>.vtext</b>	executable code (VLE mode)
<b>.const</b>	text string and constants
<b>.data</b>	initialized variables in RAM
<b>.bss</b>	uninitialized variables in RAM
<b>.sdata</b>	initialized variables in short range (R2 based)
<b>.sbss</b>	uninitialized variables in short range (R2 based)

It is possible to redirect any of these components to any user defined section by using the following pragma definition:

```
#pragma section <attribute> <qualified_name>
```

where <attribute> is either **empty** or the keyword **const**, and <qualified\_name> is a section name enclosed as follows:

(**name**) - parenthesis indicating a code section  
 [**name**] - square brackets indicating uninitialized data  
 {**name**} - curly braces indicating initialized data

A section name is a plain C identifier which *does not* begin with a dot character, and which is no longer than **13** characters. The compiler will prefix automatically the section name with a dot character when passing this information to the assembler. It is possible to switch back to the default sections by omitting the section name in the <qualified\_name> sequence.

Each pragma directive starts redirecting the selected component from the next declarations. Redefining the *bss* section forces the compiler to

produce the memory definitions for all the previous *bss* declarations before to switch to the new section.

The following directives:

```
#pragma section (code)
#pragma section const {string}
#pragma section [udata]
#pragma section {idata}
```

redefine the default sections (or the previous one) as following:

- executable code is redirected to section **.code**
- strings and constants are redirected to section **.string**
- uninitialized variables are redirected to section **.udata**
- initialized data are redirected to section **.idata**

Note that **{name}** and **[name]** are equivalent for constant section as it is considered as initialized.

The following directive:

```
#pragma section ()
```

switches back the code section to the default section **.text**.

## Referencing Absolute Addresses

This C compiler allows you to read from and write to absolute addresses, and to assign an absolute address to a function entry point or to a data object. You can give a memory location a symbolic name and associated type, and use it as you would do with any C identifier. This feature is useful for accessing memory mapped I/O ports or for calling functions at known addresses in ROM.

References to absolute addresses have the general form `@<address>`, where `<address>` is a valid memory location in your environment. For example, to associate an I/O port at address `0x40` with the identifier name `ttystat`, write a definition of the form:

```
char ttystat @0x40;
```

where `@0x40` indicates an absolute address specification and not a data initializer. Since input/output on the PowerPC architecture is memory mapped, performing I/O in this way is equivalent to writing in any given location in memory.

To use the I/O port in your application, write:

```
char c;
c = ttystat; /* to read from input port */
ttystat = c; /* to write to output port */
```

Another solution is to use a `#define` directive with a cast to the type of the object being accessed, such as:

```
#define ttystat *(char *)0x40
```

which is both inelegant and confusing. The COSMIC implementation is more efficient and easier to use, at the cost of a slight loss in portability. Note that COSMIC C does support the pointer and `#define` methods of implementing I/O access.

It is also possible to define structures at absolute addresses. For example, one can write:

```
struct acia
{
    char status;
    char data;
} acia @0x6000;
```

Using this declaration, references to `acia.status` will refer to memory location `0x6000` and `acia.data` will refer to memory location `0x6001`. This is very useful if you are building your own custom I/O hardware that must reside at some location in the PowerPC memory map.

## Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions

The compiler features two ways to insert assembly instructions in a C file. The first method uses **#pragma** directives to enclose assembly instructions. The second method uses a special function call to insert assembly instructions. The first one is more convenient for large sequences but does not provide any connection with C object. The second one is more convenient to interface with C objects but is more limited regarding the code length.

### Inlining with pragmas

The compiler accepts the following pragma sequences to start and finish assembly instruction blocks:

Directive	Description
<b>#pragma asm</b>	start assembler block
<b>#pragma endasm</b>	end assembler block

The compiler also accepts shorter sequences with the same meaning:

Directive	Description
<b>#asm</b>	start assembler block
<b>#endasm</b>	end assembler block

Such an assembler block may be located anywhere, inside or outside a function. Outside a function, it behaves syntactically as a declaration. This means that such an assembler block **cannot** split a C declaration somewhere in the middle. Inside a function, it behaves syntactically as one C instruction. This means that there is no trailing semicolon at the end, and no need for enclosing braces. It also means that such an assembler block **cannot** split a C instruction or expression somewhere in the middle.

The following example shows a correct syntax:

```
#pragma asm
    xref asmvar
#pragma endasm

extern int test;

void func(void)
{
    if (test)
    #asm          /* no need for { */
        move.w   asmvar,x0 ; access asm variable
        orc     #1,sr      ; set carry bit
        ror.w   x0
        move.w   x0,asmvar
    #endasm
    else
        test = 1;
}
```

### Inlining with `_asm`

The `_asm()` function inserts inline assembly code in your C program. The syntax is:

```
_asm("string constant", arguments...);
```

The “*string constant*” argument is the assembly code you want embedded in your C program. “*arguments*” follow the standard C rules for passing arguments.

#### NOTE

*The argument string must be shorter than 255 characters. If you wish to insert longer assembly code strings you will have to split your input among consecutive calls to `_asm()`.*

The string you specify follows standard C rules. For example, carriage returns can be denoted by the ‘\n’ character.

To produce the following assembly sequence:

```

lwz  r1,12(r3)
lwz  r2,0(r3)
bl   _main

```

you would write

```

_asm("lwz r1,12(r3)\lwz r2,0(r3)\nbl _main\n");

```

The ‘\n’ character is used to separate the instructions when writing multiple instructions in the same line.

`_asm()` does not perform any checks on its argument string. Only the assembler can detect errors in code passed as argument to an `_asm()` call.

`_asm()` can be used in expressions, if the code produced by `_asm` complies with the rules for function returns. For example:

```

n = (_asm("move.w sr,y0\n") >> 8) & 03;

```

will set `n` to the current interrupt level.

That way, you can use `_asm()` to write equivalents of C functions directly in assembly language.

### NOTE

*With both methods, the assembler source is added as is to the code during the compilation. The optimizer **does not** modify the specified instructions, unless the **-a** option is specified on the code generator. The assembler input can use lowercase or uppercase mnemonics, and may include assembler comments.*

By default, `_asm()` is returning an `int` as any undeclared function. To avoid the need of several definitions (usually conflictuous) when `_asm()` is used with different return types, the compiler implements a special behaviour when a cast is applied to `_asm()`. In such a case, the cast is considered to define the return type of `_asm()` instead of asking for a type conversion. There is no need for any prototype for the `_asm()` function as the parser verifies that the first argument is a string constant.

## Writing Interrupt Handlers

**NOTE**  
**NOT YET IMPLEMENTED**

PRELIMINARY

## Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors

You may use either an assembly language program or a C program to place the addresses of interrupt handlers in interrupt vectors. The assembly language program would be similar to the following example:

```
switch .text
xref handler1, handler2, handler3
vector1: dc.l handler1
vector2: dc.l handler2
vector3: dc.l handler3
end
```

where *handler1* and so forth are interrupt handlers.

## Interfacing C to Assembly Language

The C cross compiler translates C programs into assembly language according to the specifications described in this section.

You may write external identifiers in both uppercase and lowercase. The compiler prepends an underscore ‘\_’ character to each identifier.

The compiler places function code in the **.text** section or in the **.vtext** section in VLE mode. Function code is not to be altered or read as data. External function names are published via **xdef** declarations.

Literal data such as strings, float or long constants are normally generated into the **.const** section. Switch tables are produced in the **.text** section.

The compiler generates initialized data into the **.data** section for the other types. External data names are published via **xref** declarations. Data you declare to be of “const” type by adding the type qualifier *const* to its base type is normally generated into the **.const** section. Initialized data declared with the **@dir** space modifier will be generated into the **.sdata** section. Uninitialized data are normally generated into the **.bss** section or the **.sbss** section for **@dir** variables, unless forced to the **.data** section by the compiler option **+nobss**. Uninitialized data are normally generated into the **.bss** section.

Section	Declaration	Reference
<b>.sdata</b>	@dir int i =2;	xdef
<b>.sbss</b>	@dir int i;	xdef
<b>.data</b>	int init = 1	xdef
<b>.bss</b>	int uninit	xdef
<b>.text</b>	char putchar(c);	xdef
<b>.vtext</b>	char putchar(c);	xdef
Any of above	extern int out;	xref

Function calls are performed according to the following:

- 1) Arguments are moved onto the stack or in registers from right to left. Character and short data are widened to **int**.
- 2) The function is called via a *bl \_func* instruction.
- 3) The arguments to the function are popped off the stack.

The first arguments of a function are passed in registers according to the following rules:

- integers, longs floats and pointers are passed in registers **r3** to **r10** in that order from the leftmost argument, if these registers are not already used by some other arguments.
- doubles are passed in register pairs **r3:r4** to **r9:r10**, in that order from the leftmost argument, if these registers are not already used by some other arguments.

Therefore a function called as *func(char \*arg1, long arg2, int arg3)* will pass argument *arg1* in register **r3**, argument *arg2* in register **r4** and argument *arg3* in register **r5**.

As soon as an argument does not match these compatible types (a structure for instance) or if no register is available for the argument type, this argument and those specified after it are passed onto the stack.

Except for returned value, the registers **r3-r12** and the conditions codes are undefined on return from a function call. All other registers are preserved. The returned value is in **r3** (char or short widened to int, int, long, pointer) or **r3:r4** (double).

## Register Usage

Stack frames are maintained by each C function, using **r1** as a frame pointer. On entry to a function, the instruction “**subi r1,<n>**” will reserve **<n>** bytes for automatics. Control is returned via “**blr**”.

### NOTE

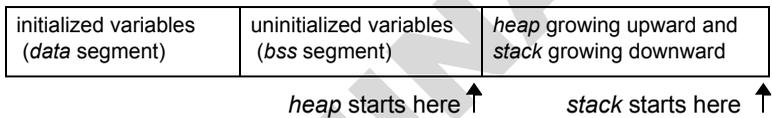
*The stack must be balanced on exit if the non-volatile registers are to be properly restored.*

PRELIMINARY

## Heap Management Control with the C Compiler

The name **heap** designates a memory area in which are allocated and deallocated memory blocks for temporary usage. A memory block is allocated with the *malloc()* function, and is released with the *free()* function. The *malloc()* function returns a pointer to the allocated area which can be used until it is released by the *free()* function. Note that the *free()* function has to be called with the pointer returned by *malloc*. The *heap* allocation differs from a local variable allocation because its life is not limited to the life of the function performing the allocation.

In an embedded application, the *malloc-free* mechanism is available and automatically set up by the compiler environment and the library. But it is possible to control externally the *heap* size and location. The default compiler behaviour is to create a data area containing application variables, *heap* and *stack* in the following way:



The *heap* start is the *bss* end, and is equal to the **\_\_memory** symbol defined by the linker with an appropriate **+def** directive. The *stack* pointer is initialized by the application startup (*crt.s*) to an absolute value, generally the end of available memory, or a value relative to the end of the *bss* segment (for multi-tasking purposes for instance). The *heap* grows upwards and the *stack* downwards until collision may occur.

The *heap* management functions maintain a global pointer named *heap pointer*, or simply **HP**, pointing to the *heap top*, and a linked list of memory blocks, free or allocated, in the area between the *heap start* and the *heap top*. In order to be able to easily modify the *heap* implementation, the *heap* management functions use a dedicated function to move the *heap* pointer whenever necessary. The *heap* pointer is initialized to the *heap start*: the *heap* is initially empty. When *malloc* needs some memory and no space is available in the free list, it calls this dedicated function named **\_sbreak** to move the *heap* pointer upwards if possible.

`_sbreak` will return a NULL pointer if this move is not possible (usually this is because the heap would overlap the stack). Therefore it is possible to change the heap default location by rewriting the `_sbreak` function.

The default `_sbreak` function provided by the library is as follows:

```
/*    SET SYSTEM BREAK
 */
void *sbreak(int size)
{
    extern char _memory;
    static char *_brk = NULL; /* memory break */
    char *obrkr, yellow[40];

    if (!_brk)                /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = &_memory;
    obrkr = _brk;             /* old top */
    _brk += size;             /* new top */
    if (yellow = _brk || _brk < &_memory)
    {
        /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrkr;        /* restore old top */
        return (NULL);      /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrkr);          /* return new area start */
}
```

The `yellow` array is used to calculate the `stack` pointer value to check the `heap` limits. This array is declared as the **last** local variable, so its address is almost equal to the stack pointer once the function has been entered. It is declared to be 40 bytes wide to allow for some security margin. If the new top is outside the authorized limits, the function returns a NULL pointer, otherwise, it returns the start of the new allocated area. Note that the top variable `_brk` is a static variable initialized to zero (NULL pointer). It is set to the heap start on the first call. It is also possible to initialize it directly within the declaration, but in this case, we create an initialized variable in the **data** segment which needs to be initialized by the startup. The current code avoids such a requirement by initializing the variable to zero (in the `bss` segment), which is simply done by the standard startup sequence.

## Modifying The Heap Location

It is easy to modify the `_sbreak` function in order to handle the heap in a separated memory area. The first example shown below handles the heap area in a standard C array, which will be part of the application variables.

The heap area is declared as an array of `char` simply named `heap`. The algorithm is mainly the same, and once the new top is computed, it is compared with the array limits. Note that the array is declared as a static local variable. It is possible to have it declared as a static global variable. If you want it to be global, be careful on the selected name. You should start it with a `'_'` character to avoid any conflict with the application variables.

The modified `_sbreak` function using an array is as follows:

```

/*    SET SYSTEM BREAK IN AN ARRAY
*/
#define HSIZE 800/* heap size */

void *sbreak(int size)
{
    static char *_brk = NULL;/* memory break */
    static char heap[HSIZE];/* heap area */
    char *obrk;

    if (!_brk)                /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = heap;

    obrk = _brk;              /* old top */
    _brk += size;             /* new top */
    if (&heap[HSIZE] <= _brk || _brk < heap)
    {
        /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrk;          /* restore old top */
        return (NULL);        /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrk);            /* return new area start */
}

```

If you need to place the heap array at a specific location, you need to locate this module at a specific address using the linker options. In the above example, the heap array will be located in the `.bss` segment, thus, complicating the startup code which would need to zero two `bss` sections instead of one. Compiling this function, with the `+nobss` option,

will force allocation of the heap, in the data segment and you can locate it easily with linker directives as:

```
+seg .data -b 0x8000    # heap start
sbreak.o              # sbreak function
```

It is also possible to handle the heap area outside of any C object, just by defining the heap start and end values using the linker **+def** directives. Assuming these symbols are named **\_\_heap\_start** and **\_\_heap\_end** in C, it is possible to define them at link time with such directives:

```
+def __heap_start=0x8000# heap start
+def __heap_end=0xA000 # heap end
```

### NOTE

*Since the initial content of the area can be undefined, the **-ib** option can be specified to not include the segment in the automatic RAM initialization.*

*You need to add an extra **'** character when defining a C symbol at link time to match the C compiler naming conventions.*

The modified `_sbreak` function is as follows:

```
/*    SET SYSTEM BREAK IN MEMORY
*/
void *sbreak(int size)
{
    extern char __heap_start, __heap_end; /* heap limits */
    static char *_brk = NULL; /* memory break */
    char *obrk;

    if (!_brk) /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = heap_start;
    obrk = _brk; /* old top */
    _brk += size; /* new top */
    if (&__heap_end <= _brk || _brk < &__heap_start)
    {
        /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrk; /* restore old top */
        return (NULL); /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrk); /* return new area start */
}
```

Note that it is possible to use this `_sbreak` function as a `malloc` equivalent function with some restrictions. The `malloc` function should be used when the allocated memory has to be released, or if the application has no idea about the total amount of space needed. If memory can be allocated and never released, the free mechanism is not necessary, nor the linked list of memory blocks built by `malloc`. In that case, simply rename the `_sbreak` function as `malloc`, regardless of its implementation, and you will get a very efficient and compact `malloc` mechanism. You may do the renaming in the function itself, which needs to be recompiled, or by using a `#define` at C level, or by renaming the function at link time with a **+def** directive such as:

```
+pri                               # enter a private region
+def _malloc=__sbreak             # defines malloc as _sbreak
+new                               # close region and forget malloc
libi.ppc                          # load library containing _sbreak
```

This sequence has to be placed just before loading libraries, or before placing the module containing the `_sbreak` function. The private region is used to forget the `_malloc` reference once it has been aliased to `_sbreak`.

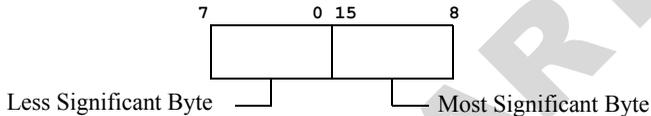
## Data Representation

Data objects of type *char* are stored as one byte:



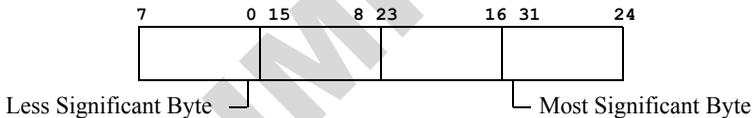
### Char representation

Data objects of type *short* are stored as two bytes, less significant byte first:



### Short

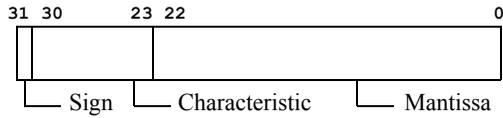
Data objects of type *int*, *long* and *pointer* are stored as four bytes, in ascending order of significance:



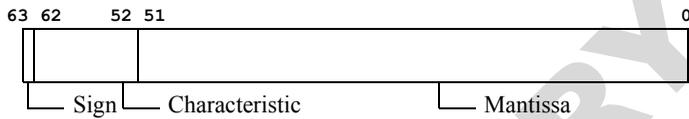
### Int, Long, Pointer representation

Data objects of type *float* and *double* are represented as for the proposed IEEE Floating Point Standard; four bytes (for float) or eight bytes (for double) stored in descending order of significance. The IEEE representation is: most significant bit is one for negative numbers, and zero otherwise; the next eight bits (for float) or eleven bits (for double) are the characteristic, biased such that the binary exponent of the number is the characteristic minus 126 (for float) or 1022 (for double); the remaining bits are the fraction, starting with the weighted bit. If the characteristic is zero, the entire number is taken as zero, and should be all zeros to avoid confusing some routines that do not process the entire number. Otherwise there is an assumed 0.5 (assertion of the weighted bit) added to all fractions to put them in the interval [0.5, 1.0). The value of the

number is the fraction, multiplied by -1 if the sign bit is set, multiplied by 2 raised to the exponent.



**Float representation**



**Double representation**



# Using The Compiler

---

This chapter explains how to use the C cross compiler to compile programs on your host system. It explains how to invoke the compiler, and describes its options. It also describes the functions which constitute the C library. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Invoking the Compiler
- File Naming Conventions
- Generating Listings
- Generating an Error File
- C Library Support
- Descriptions of C Library Functions

## Invoking the Compiler

To invoke the cross compiler, type the command **cxppc**, followed by the compiler options and the name(s) of the file(s) you want to compile. All the valid compiler options are described in this chapter. Commands to compile source files have the form:

```
cxppc [options] <files>.[c|s]
```

**cxppc** is the name of the *compiler*. The option list is optional. You must include the name of at least one input file *<file>*. *<file>* can be a C source file with the suffix *‘.c’*, or an assembly language source file with the suffix *‘.s’*. You may specify multiple input files with any combination of these suffixes in any order.

If you do not specify any command line options, **cxppc** will compile your *<files>* with the default options. It will also write the name of each file as it is processed. It writes any error messages to `STDERR`.

The following command line:

```
cxppc acia.c
```

compiles and assembles the *acia.c* C program, creating the relocatable program **acia.o**.

If the compiler finds an error in your program, it halts compilation. When an error occurs, the compiler sends an error message to your terminal screen unless the option **-e** has been specified on the command line. In this case, all error messages are written to a file whose name is obtained by replacing the suffix *.c* of the source file by the suffix *.err*. An error message is still output on the terminal screen to indicate that errors have been found. **Appendix A**, “[Compiler Error Messages](#)”, lists the error messages the compiler generates. If one or more command line arguments are invalid, **cxppc** processes the next file name on the command line and begins the compilation process again.

The example command above does not specify any compiler options. In this case, the compiler will use only default options to compile and

assemble your program. You can change the operation of the compiler by specifying the options you want when you run the compiler.

To specify options to the compiler, type the appropriate option or options on the command line as shown in the first example above. Options should be separated with spaces. You must include the '-' or '+' that is part of the option name.

## Compiler Command Line Options

The **cxppc** compiler accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cxppc [options] <files>
-a*> assembler options
-ce* path for errors
-cl* path for listings
-co* path for objects
-d*> define symbol
-e create error file
-ec all C files
-es all assembler files
-ex* prefix executables
-f* configuration file
-g*> code generator options
-i*> path for include
-l create listing
-no do not use optimizer
-o*> optimizer options
-p*> parser options
-s create only assembler file
-sp create only preprocessor file
-t* path for temporary files
-v verbose
-x do not execute
+*> select compiler options
```

### Cxppc Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a*</b>	specify assembler options. Up to 60 options can be specified on the same command line. See “ <a href="#">Invoking cappc</a> ” in <b>Chapter 5</b> , for the list of all accepted options.
<b>-ce*</b>	specify a path for the error files. By default, errors are created in the same directory than the source files.
<b>-cl*</b>	specify a path for the listing files. By default, listings are created in the same directory than the source files.
<b>-co*</b>	specify a path for the object files. By default, objects are created in the same directory than the source files.
<b>-d*^</b>	specify * as the name of a user-defined preprocessor symbol ( <b>#define</b> ). The form of the definition is <b>-dsymbol[=value]</b> ; the symbol is set to 1 if value is omitted. You can specify up to 60 such definitions.
<b>-e</b>	log errors from parser in a file instead of displaying them on the terminal screen. The error file name is defaulted to <code>&lt;file&gt;.err</code> , and is created only if there are errors.
<b>-ec</b>	treat all files as C source files.
<b>-es</b>	treat all files as assembler source files.
<b>-ex</b>	use the compiler driver’s path as prefix to quickly locate the executable passes. Default is to use the path variable environment. This method is faster than the default behavior but reduces the command line length.
<b>-f*</b>	specify * as the name of a configuration file. This file contains a list of options which will be automatically used by the compiler. If no file name is specified, then the compiler looks for a default configuration file named <b>cxppc.cxf</b> in the compiler directory as specified in the installation process. See <b>Appendix B</b> , “ <a href="#">The Configuration File</a> ”.
<b>-g*&gt;</b>	specify code generation options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See “ <a href="#">The cgppc Code Generator</a> ” in <b>Appendix D</b> , for the list of all accepted options.

Cxppc Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-i*&gt;</b>	define include path. You can define up to 60 different paths. Each path is a directory name, <b>not</b> terminated by any directory separator character.
<b>-l</b>	merge C source listing with assembly language code; listing output defaults to <file>.ls.
<b>-no</b>	do not use the optimizer.
<b>-o*&gt;</b>	specify optimizer options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See " <a href="#">The ccppc Assembly Language Optimizer</a> " in <b>Appendix D</b> , for the list of all accepted options.
<b>-p*&gt;</b>	specify parser options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See " <a href="#">The cpppc Parser</a> " in <b>Appendix D</b> , to get the list of all accepted options.
<b>-s</b>	create only assembler files and stop. Do not assemble the files produced.
<b>-sm</b>	create only a list of 'make' compatible dependencies consisting for each source file in the object name followed by a list of header files needed to compile that file.
<b>-sp</b>	create only preprocessed files and stop. Do not compile files produced. Preprocessed output defaults to <file>.p. The produced files can be compiled as C source files.
<b>-t*</b>	specify path for temporary files. The path is a directory name, <b>not</b> terminated by any directory separator character.
<b>-v</b>	be "verbose". Before executing a command, print the command, along with its arguments, to STDOUT. The default is to output only the names of each file processed. Each name is followed by a colon and newline.
<b>-x</b>	do not execute the passes, instead write to STDOUT the commands which otherwise would have been performed.
<b>+*&gt;</b>	select a predefined compiler option. These options are predefined in the configuration file. You can specify up to 60 compiler options on the command line. The following documents the available options as provided by the default configuration file

**Cxppc Option Usage (cont.)**

Option	Description
<b>+debug</b>	produce debug information to be used by the debug utilities provided with the compiler and by any external debugger.
<b>+nobss</b>	do not use the <i>.bss</i> section. By default, uninitialized variables are defined into the <i>.bss</i> section. This option is useful to force all variables to be grouped into a single section.
<b>+rev</b>	reverse the bitfield filling order. By default, bitfields are filled from the Less Significant Bit (LSB) towards the Most Significant Bit (MSB) of a memory cell. If the <b>+rev</b> option is specified, bitfields are filled from the <i>msb</i> to the <i>lsb</i> .
<b>+split</b>	create a separate sub-section per function, up to a maximum number of 256 sections, thus allowing the linker to suppress unused functions if the <b>-k</b> option has been specified on at least one segment in the linker command file. For objects with more than 256 functions, the functions will be grouped together to a minimum number of functions per sub-section to not exceed the maximum number of 256 sub-sections. See " <a href="#">Segment Control Options</a> " in <b>Chapter 6</b> .
<b>+strict</b>	direct the compiler to enforce stronger type checking. For more information, see " <a href="#">Extra verifications</a> " in <b>Appendix D</b> .
<b>+warn</b>	enable warnings.

## File Naming Conventions

The programs making up the C cross compiler generate the following output file names, by default. See the documentation on a specific program for information about how to change the default file names accepted as input or generated as output.

Program	Input File Name	Output File Name
<b>cpppc</b>	<file>.c	<file>.1
<b>cgppc</b>	<file>.1	<file>.2
<b>coppcc</b>	<file>.2	<file>.s
error listing	<file>.c	<file>.err
assembler listing	<file>.[c s]	<file>.ls
C header files	<file>.h	

<b>cappc</b>	<file>.s	<file>.o
source listing	<file>.s	<file>.ls

<b>clnk</b>	<file>.o	name required
-------------	----------	---------------

<b>chex</b>	<file>	STDOUT
<b>clabs</b>	<file.ppc>	<files>.la
<b>clib</b>	<file>	name required
<b>cobj</b>	<file>	STDOUT

## Generating Listings

You can generate listings of the output of any (or all) the compiler passes by specifying the **-l** option to **cxppc**. You can locate the listing file in a different directory by using the **-cl** option.

The example program provided in the package shows the listing produced by compiling the C source file *acia.c* with the **-l** option:

```
cxppc -l acia.c
```

## Generating an Error File

You can generate a file containing all the error messages output by the parser by specifying the **-e** option to the **cxppc** compiler. You can locate the listing file in a different directory by using the **-ce** option. For example, you would type:

```
cxppc -e prog.c
```

The error file name is obtained from the source filename by replacing the **.c** suffix by the **.err** suffix.

## Return Status

**cxppc** returns success if it can process all files successfully. It prints a message to **STDERR** and returns failure if there are errors in at least one processed file.

## Examples

To echo the names of each program that the compiler runs:

```
cxppc -v file.c
```

To save the intermediate files created by the code generator and halt before the assembler:

```
cxppc -s file.c
```

## C Library Support

This section describes the facilities provided by the C library. The C cross compiler for PowerPC includes all useful functions for programmers writing applications for ROM-based systems.

### How C Library Functions are Packaged

The functions in the C library are packaged in four separate sub-libraries; one for machine-dependent routines (the *machine* library), one that does not support floating point (the *integer* library) and one that provides full floating point support (the *floating point* library). If your application does not perform floating point calculations, you can decrease its size and increase its runtime efficiency by including only the integer library.

### Inserting Assembler Code Directly

Assembler instructions can be quoted directly into C source files, and entered unchanged into the output assembly stream, by use of the `_asm()` function. This function is not part of any library as it is recognized by the compiler itself. See “[Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions](#)” in [Chapter 3](#).

### Linking Libraries with Your Program

If your application requires floating point support, you **must** specify the floating point library **before** the integer library in the linker command file. Modules common to both libraries will therefore be loaded from the floating point library, followed by the appropriate modules from the floating point and integer libraries, in that order.

### Integer Library Functions

The following table lists the C library functions in the integer library.

abs	ispunct	printf	strcspn
atoi	isqrt	putchar	strlen
atol	isspace	puts	strncat
calloc	isupper	rand	strncmp
div	isxdigit	realloc	strncpy
free	labs	sbreak	strpbrk
getchar	ldiv	scanf	strchr
gets	longjmp	setjmp	strspn
isalnum	lsqrt	sprintf	strstr
isalpha	malloc	srand	strtoul
isctrl	memchr	sscanf	tolower

isdigit	memcmp	strcat	toupper
isgraph	memcpy	strchr	
islower	memmove	strcmp	
isprint	memset	strcpy	

## Floating Point Library Functions

The following table lists the C library functions in the floating point library.

acos	cosh	log	sinh
asin	exp	log10	sprintf
atan	fabs	modf	sqrt
atan2	floor	pow	sscanf
atof	fmod	printf	strtod
ceil	frexp	scanf	tan
cos	ldexp	sin	tanh

## Common Input/Output Functions

Six of the functions that perform stream input/output are included in both the integer and floating point libraries. The functionalities of the versions in the integer library are a subset of the functionalities of their floating point counterparts. The versions in the **Integer** library **cannot** print or manipulate floating point numbers. These functions are: *printf*, *scanf*, *sprintf*, *sscanf*, *vprintf* and *vsprintf*.

## Functions Implemented as Macros

Five of the functions in the C library are actually implemented as “*macros*”. Unlike other functions, which (if they do not return *int*) are declared in header files and defined in a separate object module that is linked in with your program later, functions implemented as macros are defined using **#define** preprocessor directives in the header file that declares them. Macros can therefore be used independently of any library by including the header file that defines and declares them with your program, as explained below. The functions in the C library that are implemented as macros are: *max*, *min*, *va\_arg*, *va\_end*, and *va\_start*.

## Functions Implemented as Builtins

A few functions of the C library are actually implemented as “*builtins*”. The code for those functions is directly inlined instead of passing arguments and calling a function. Arguments are built directly in registers and the code is produced to match exactly the function behaviour.

Those functions are also provided in the library to allow them to be called through pointers. The functions in the C library that are implemented as builtins are: *abs*, *max*, *min*, *memcpy* and *strcpy*.

## Including Header Files

If your application calls a C library function, you must include the header file that declares the function at compile time, in order to use the proper return type and the proper function prototyping, so that all the expected arguments are properly evaluated. You do this by writing a preprocessor directive of the form:

```
#include <header_name>
```

in your program, where *<header\_name>* is the name of the appropriate header file enclosed in angle brackets. The required header file should be included before you refer to any function that it declares.

The names of the header files packaged with the C library and the functions declared in each header are listed below.

**<assert.h>** - Header file for the assertion macro: *assert*.

**<ctype.h>** - Header file for the character functions: *isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isctrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*, *isxdigit*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *islower*, *tolower* and *toupper*.

**<float.h>** - Header file for limit constants for floating point values.

**<io\*.h>** - Header file for input-output registers. Each register has an upper-case name which matches the standard definition.

**<limits.h>** - Header file for limit constants of the compiler.

**<math.h>** - Header file for mathematical functions: *acos*, *asin*, *atan*, *atan2*, *ceil*, *cos*, *cosh*, *exp*, *fabs*, *floor*, *fmod*, *frexp*, *ldexp*, *log*, *log10*, *modf*, *pow*, *sin*, *sinh*, *sqrt*, *tan* and *tanh*.

**<setjmp.h>** - Header file for nonlocal jumps: *setjmp* and *longjmp*

<**stdarg.h**> - Header file for walking argument lists: *va\_arg*, *va\_end* and *va\_start*. Use these macros with any function you write that must accept a variable number of arguments.

<**stddef.h**> - Header file for types: *size\_t*, *wchar\_t* and *ptrdiff\_t*.

<**stdio.h**> - Header file for stream input/output: *getchar*, *gets*, *printf*, *putchar*, *puts* and *sprintf*.

<**stdlib.h**> - Header file for general utilities: *abs*, *abort*, *atof*, *atoi*, *atol*, *calloc*, *div*, *exit*, *free*, *isqrt*, *labs*, *ldiv*, *lsqrt*, *malloc*, *rand*, *realloc*, *srand*, *strtod*, *strtol* and *strtoul*.

<**string.h**> - Header file for string functions: *memchr*, *memcmp*, *memcpy*, *memmove*, *memset*, *strcat*, *strchr*, *strcmp*, *strcpy*, *strncpy*, *strcat*, *strncat*, *strncmp*, *strncpy*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn* and *strstr*.

**Functions returning int** - C library functions that return *int* and can therefore be called without any header file, since *int* is the function return type that the compiler assumed by default, are: *isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isctrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*, *isxdigit*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *islower*, *sbreak*, *tolower* and *toupper*.

## Descriptions of C Library Functions

The following pages describe each of the functions in the C library in quick reference format. The descriptions are in alphabetical order by function name.

The *syntax* field describes the function prototype with the return type and the expected arguments, and if any, the header file name where this function has been declared.

# `_asm`

## Description

Generate inline assembly code

## Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
_asm(<string constant>, ...)
```

## Function

`_asm` generates inline assembly code by copying `<string constant>` and quoting it into the output assembly code stream. If extra arguments are specified, they are processed as for a standard function. If arguments are stacked, they are popped off just after the inline code produced. For more information, see “[Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

## Return Value

Nothing, unless `_asm()` is used in an expression. In that case, normal return conventions must be followed. See “[Register Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

## Example

The sequence `move.b d0,d7 move.w a0,a7`, may be generated by the following call:

```
_asm("\tmove.b d0,d7\nmove.w a0,a7\n");
```

## Notes

`_asm()` is not packaged in any library. It is recognized (and its argument passed unchanged) by the compiler itself.

# abort

## Description

Abort program execution

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void abort(void)
```

## Function

**abort** stops the program execution by calling the *exit* function which is placed by the startup module just after the call to the main function.

## Return Value

*abort* never returns.

## Example

To abort in case of error:

```
if (fatal_error)
    abort();
```

## See Also

*exit*

## Notes

*abort* is a macro equivalent to the function name *exit*.

# abs

## Description

Find absolute value

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int abs(int i)
```

## Function

**abs** obtains the absolute value of *i*. No check is made to see that the result can be properly represented.

## Return Value

*abs* returns the absolute value of *i*, expressed as an **int**.

## Example

To print out a debit or credit balance:

```
printf("balance %d%s\n", abs(bal), (bal < 0)? "CR" : "");
```

## See Also

*labs*, *fabs*

## Notes

*abs* is packaged in the integer library.

# acos

## Description

Arcosine

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double acos (double x)
```

## Function

**acos** computes the angle in radians the cosine of which is *x*, to full double precision.

## Return Value

*acos* returns the closest internal representation to *acos(x)*, expressed as a double floating value in the range [0, pi]. If *x* is outside the range [-1, 1], *acos* returns zero.

## Example

To find the arccosine of *x*:

```
theta = acos(x);
```

## See Also

*asin*, *atan*, *atan2*

## Notes

*acos* is packaged in the floating point library.

# asin

## Description

Arcsine

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double asin(double x)
```

## Function

**asin** computes the angle in radians the sine of which is *x*, to full double precision.

## Return Value

*asin* returns the nearest internal representation to *asin(x)*, expressed as a double floating value in the range  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ . If *x* is outside the range  $[-1, 1]$ , *asin* returns zero.

## Example

To compute the arcsine of *y*:

```
theta = asin(y);
```

## See Also

*acos*, *atan*, *atan2*

## Notes

*asin* is packaged in the floating point library.

# atan

## Description

Arctangent

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double atan(double x)
```

## Function

**atan** computes the angle in radians; the tangent of which is  $x$ , *atan* computes the angle in radians; the tangent of which is  $x$ , to full double precision.

## Return Value

*atan* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\text{atan}(x)$ , expressed as a double floating value in the range  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ .

## Example

To find the phase angle of a vector in degrees:

```
theta = atan(y/x) * 180.0 / pi;
```

## See Also

*acos*, *asin*, *atan2*

## Notes

*atan* is packaged in the floating point library.

# atan2

## Description

Arctangent of  $y/x$

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double atan2(double y, double x)
```

## Function

**atan2** computes the angle in radians the tangent of which is  $y/x$  to full double precision. If  $y$  is negative, the result is negative. If  $x$  is negative, the magnitude of the result is greater than  $\pi/2$ .

## Return Value

*atan2* returns the closest internal representation to  $\text{atan}(y/x)$ , expressed as a double floating value in the range  $[-\pi, \pi]$ . If both input arguments are zero, *atan2* returns zero.

## Example

To find the phase angle of a vector in degrees:

```
theta = atan2(y/x) * 180.0/pi;
```

## See Also

*acos*, *asin*, *atan*

## Notes

*atan2* is packaged in the floating point library.

# atof

## Description

Convert buffer to double

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double atof(char *nptr)
```

## Function

**atof** converts the string at *nptr* into a double. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number, with an optional fraction and exponent. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable inputs match the pattern:

$$[+|-]d*[\.d*][e[+|-]dd*]$$

where **d** is any decimal digit and **e** is the character ‘e’ or ‘E’. No checks are made against overflow, underflow, or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*atof* returns the converted double value. If the string has no recognizable characters, it returns zero.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a double at *d*:

```
gets(buf);
d = atof(buf);
```

## See Also

*atoi*, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtod*

## Notes

*atof* is packaged in the floating point library.

# atoi

## Description

Convert buffer to integer

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int atoi(char *nptr)
```

## Function

**atoi** converts the string at *nptr* into an integer. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable characters are the decimal digits. If the stop character is **I** or **L**, it is skipped over.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*atoi* returns the converted integer value. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to an *int* at *i*:

```
gets(buf);
i = atoi(buf);
```

## See Also

*atof*, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtod*

## Notes

*atoi* is packaged in the integer library.

# atol

## Description

Convert buffer to long

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long atol(char *nptr)
```

## Function

**atol** converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable characters are the decimal digits. If the stop character is **I** or **L** it is skipped over.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*atol* returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long **I**:

```
gets(buf);
l = atol(buf);
```

## See Also

*atof*, *atoi*, *strtol*, *strtod*

## Notes

*atol* is packaged in the integer library.

# calloc

## Description

Allocate and clear space on the heap

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *calloc(int nelem, int elsize)
```

## Function

**calloc** allocates space on the heap for an item of size *nbytes*, where  $nbytes = nelem * elsize$ . The space allocated is guaranteed to be at least *nbytes* long, starting from the pointer returned, which is guaranteed to be on a proper storage boundary for an object of any type. The heap is grown as necessary. If space is exhausted, *calloc* returns a null pointer. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting. The allocated space is initialized to zero.

## Return Value

*calloc* returns a pointer to the start of the allocated cell if successful; otherwise it returns NULL.

## Example

To allocate an array of ten doubles:

```
double *pd;
pd = calloc(10, sizeof (double));
```

## See Also

*free, malloc, realloc*

## Notes

*calloc* is packaged in the integer library.

# ceil

## Description

Round to next higher integer

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double ceil(double x)
```

## Function

**ceil** computes the smallest integer greater than or equal to *x*.

## Return Value

*ceil* returns the smallest integer greater than or equal to *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

## Example

x	ceil(x)
5.1	6.0
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-5.0	-5.0
-5.1	-5.0

## See Also

*floor*

## Notes

*ceil* is packaged in the floating point library.

# `_checksum`

## Description

Verify the recorded checksum

## Syntax

```
int _checksum()
```

## Function

`_checksum` scans the descriptor built by the linker and controls at the end that the computed 8 bit checksum is equal to the one expected. For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## Return Value

`_checksum` returns 0 if the checksum is correct, or a value different of 0 otherwise.

## Example

```
if (_checksum())  
    abort();
```

## Notes

The descriptor is built by the linker only if the `_checksum` function is called by the application, even if there are segments marked with the **-ck** option.

`_checksum` is packaged in the integer library.

## See Also

`_checksumx`, `_checksum16`, `_checksum16x`

# `_checksumx`

## Description

Verify the recorded checksum

## Syntax

```
int _checksumx ()
```

## Function

`_checksumx` scans the descriptor built by the linker and controls at the end that the computed 8 bit checksum is equal to the one expected. For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## Return Value

`_checksumx` returns 0 if the checksum is correct, or a value different of 0 otherwise.

## Example

```
if (_checksumx())  
    abort();
```

## Notes

The descriptor is built by the linker only if the `_checksumx` function is called by the application, even if there are segments marked with the **-ck** option.

`_checksumx` is packaged in the integer library.

## See Also

`_checksum`, `_checksum16`, `_checksum16x`

# `_checksum16`

## Description

Verify the recorded checksum

## Syntax

```
int _checksum16()
```

## Function

`_checksum16` scans the descriptor built by the linker and controls at the end that the computed 16 bit checksum is equal to the one expected. For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## Return Value

`_checksum16` returns 0 if the checksum is correct, or a value different of 0 otherwise.

## Example

```
if (_checksum16())  
    abort();
```

## Notes

The descriptor is built by the linker only if the `_checksum16` function is called by the application, even if there are segments marked with the **-ck** option.

`_checksum16` is packaged in the integer library.

## See Also

`_checksum`, `_checksumx`, `_checksum16x`

# \_checksum16x

## Description

Verify the recorded checksum

## Syntax

```
int _checksum16x ()
```

## Function

**\_checksum16x** scans the descriptor built by the linker and controls at the end that the computed 16 bit checksum is equal to the one expected. For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

## Return Value

*\_checksum16x* returns 0 if the checksum is correct, or a value different of 0 otherwise.

## Example

```
if (_checksum16x())  
    abort();
```

## Notes

The descriptor is built by the linker only if the *\_checksum16x* function is called by the application, even if there are segments marked with the **-ck** option.

*\_checksum16x* is packaged in the integer library.

## See Also

*\_checksum*, *\_checksumx*, *\_checksum16*

# COS

## Description

Cosine

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double cos(double x)
```

## Function

**cos** computes the cosine of  $x$ , expressed in radians, to full double precision. If the magnitude of  $x$  is too large to contain a fractional quadrant part, the value of *cos* is 1.

## Return Value

*cos* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\cos(x)$  in the range  $[0, \pi]$ , expressed as a double floating value. A large argument may return a meaningless value.

## Example

To rotate a vector through the angle *theta*:

```
xnew = xold * cos(theta) - yold * sin(theta);
ynew = xold * sin(theta) + yold * cos(theta);
```

## See Also

*sin*, *tan*

## Notes

*cos* is packaged in the floating point library.

# cosh

## Description

Hyperbolic cosine

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double cosh(double x)
```

## Function

**cosh** computes the hyperbolic cosine of  $x$  to full double precision.

## Return Value

*cosh* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\cosh(x)$  expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *cosh* returns zero.

## Example

To use the Moivre's theorem to compute  $(\cosh x + \sinh x)$  to the  $n$ th power:

```
demoivre = cosh(n * x) + sinh(n * x);
```

## See Also

*exp*, *sinh*, *tanh*

## Notes

*cosh* is packaged in the floating point library.

# div

## Description

Divide with quotient and remainder

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
div_t div(int numer, int denom)
```

## Function

**div** divides the integer *numer* by the integer *denom* and returns the quotient and the remainder in a structure of type *div\_t*. The field *quot* contains the quotient and the field *rem* contains the remainder.

## Return Value

*div* returns a structure of type *div\_t* containing both quotient and remainder.

## Example

To get minutes and seconds from a delay in seconds:

```
div_t result;

result = div(time, 60);
min = result.quot;
sec = result.rem;
```

## See Also

*ldiv*

## Notes

*div* is packaged in the integer library.

# exit

## Description

Exit program execution

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void exit(int status)
```

## Function

**exit** stops the execution of a program by switching to the startup module just after the call to the *main* function. The status argument is not used by the current implementation.

## Return Value

*exit* never returns.

## Example

To *exit* in case of error:

```
if (fatal_error)
    exit();
```

## See Also

*abort*

## Notes

*exit* is in the startup module.

# exp

## Description

Exponential

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double exp(double x)
```

## Function

*exp* computes the exponential of *x* to full double precision.

## Return Value

*exp* returns the nearest internal representation to *exp x*, expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *exp* returns zero.

## Example

To compute the hyperbolic sine of *x*:

```
sinh = (exp(x) - exp(-x)) / 2.0;
```

## See Also

*log*

## Notes

*exp* is packaged in the floating point library.

# **fabs**

## **Description**

Find double absolute value

## **Syntax**

```
#include <math.h>
double fabs(double x)
```

## **Function**

**fabs** obtains the absolute value of *x*.

## **Return Value**

*fabs* returns the absolute value of *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

## **Example**

<i>x</i>	<i>fabs(x)</i>
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-3.7	3.7

## **See Also**

*abs*, *labs*

## **Notes**

*fabs* is packaged in the floating point library.

# floor

## Description

Round to next lower integer

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double floor(double x)
```

## Function

**floor** computes the largest integer less than or equal to *x*.

## Return Value

*floor* returns the largest integer less than or equal to *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

## Example

x	floor(x)
5.1	5.0
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-5.0	-5.0
-5.1	-6.0

## See Also

*ceil*

## Notes

*floor* is packaged in the floating point library.

# fmod

## Description

Find double modulus

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double fmod(double x, double y)
```

## Function

**fmod** computes the floating point remainder of  $x/y$ , to full double precision. The return value of  $f$  is determined using the formula:

$$f = x - i * y$$

where  $i$  is some integer,  $f$  is the same sign as  $x$ , and the absolute value of  $f$  is less than the absolute value of  $y$ .

## Return Value

*fmod* returns the value of  $f$  expressed as a double floating value. If  $y$  is zero, *fmod* returns zero.

## Example

x	y	fmod(x, y)
5.5	5.0	0.5
5.0	5.0	0.0
0.0	0.0	0.0
-5.5	5.0	-0.5

## Notes

*fmod* is packaged in the floating point library.

# free

## Description

Free space on the heap

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void free(void *ptr)
```

## Function

**free** returns an allocated cell to the heap for subsequent reuse. The cell pointer *ptr* must have been obtained by an earlier *calloc*, *malloc*, or *realloc* call; otherwise the heap will become corrupted. *free* does its best to check for invalid values of *ptr*. A NULL value for *ptr* is explicitly allowed, however, and is ignored.

## Return Value

Nothing.

## Example

To give back an allocated area:

```
free(pd);
```

## See Also

*calloc*, *malloc*, *realloc*

## Notes

No effort is made to lower the system break when storage is freed, so it is quite possible that earlier activity on the heap may cause problems later on the stack.

*free* is packaged in the integer library.

# frexp

## Description

Extract fraction from exponent part

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double frexp(double val, int *exp)
```

## Function

**frexp** partitions the double at *val*, which should be non-zero, into a fraction in the interval  $[1/2, 1)$  times two raised to an integer power. It then delivers the integer power to *\*exp*, and returns the fractional portion as the value of the function. The exponent is generally meaningless if *val* is zero.

## Return Value

*frexp* returns the power of two fraction of the double at *val* as the return value of the function, and writes the exponent at *\*exp*.

## Example

To implement the *sqrt(x)* function:

```
double sqrt(double x)
{
    extern double newton(double);
    int n;
    x = frexp(x, &n);
    x = newton(x);
    if (n & 1)
        x *= SQRT2;
    return (ldexp(x, n / 2));
}
```

## See Also

*ldexp*

## Notes

*frexp* is packaged in the floating point library.

# getchar

## Description

Get character from input stream

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int getchar(void)
```

## Function

**getchar** obtains the next input character, if any, from the user supplied input stream. This user must rewrite this function in C or in assembly language to provide an interface to the input mechanism of the C library.

## Return Value

*getchar* returns the next character from the input stream. If end of file (break) is encountered, or a read error occurs, *getchar* returns EOF.

## Example

To copy characters from the input stream to the output stream:

```
while ((c = getchar()) != EOF)
    putchar(c);
```

## See Also

*putchar*

## Notes

*getchar* is packaged in the integer library.

# gets

## Description

Get a text line from input stream

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
char *gets(char *s)
```

## Function

**gets** copies characters from the input stream to the buffer starting at *s*. Characters are copied until a newline is reached or end of file is reached. If a newline is reached, it is discarded and a NUL is written immediately following the last character read into *s*.

*gets* uses *getchar* to read each character.

## Return Value

*gets* returns *s* if successful. If end of file is reached, *gets* returns NULL. If a read error occurs, the array contents are indeterminate and *gets* returns NULL.

## Example

To copy input to output, line by line:

```
while (puts (gets (buf) ))
    ;
```

## See Also

*puts*

## Notes

There is no assured limit on the size of the line read by *gets*.

*gets* is packaged in the integer library.

# isalnum

## Description

Test for alphabetic or numeric character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalnum(int c)
```

## Function

**isalnum** tests whether *c* is an alphabetic character (either upper or lower case), or a decimal digit.

## Return Value

*isalnum* returns nonzero if the argument is an alphabetic or numeric character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To test for a valid C identifier:

```
if (isalpha(*s) || *s == '_' )
    for (++s; isalnum(*s) || *s == '_'; ++s)
        ;
```

## See Also

*isalpha*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isalnum* is packaged in the integer library.

# isalpha

## Description

Test for alphabetic character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalpha(int c)
```

## Function

**isalpha** tests whether *c* is an alphabetic character, either upper or lower case.

## Return Value

*isalpha* returns nonzero if the argument is an alphabetic character. Otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To find the end points of an alphabetic string:

```
while (*first && !isalpha(*first))
    ++first;
for (last = first; isalpha(*last); ++last)
    ;
```

## See Also

*isalnum*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isalpha* is packaged in the integer library.

# isctrl

## Description

Test for control character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isctrl(int c)
```

## Function

**isctrl** tests whether *c* is a delete character (0177 in ASCII), or an ordinary control character (less than 040 in ASCII).

## Return Value

*isctrl* returns nonzero if *c* is a control character; otherwise the value is zero.

## Example

To map control characters to percent signs:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isctrl(*s))
        *s = '%';
```

## See Also

*isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isctrl* is packaged in the integer library.

# isdigit

## Description

Test for digit

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isdigit(int c)
```

## Function

**isdigit** tests whether *c* is a decimal digit.

## Return Value

*isdigit* returns nonzero if *c* is a decimal digit; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To convert a decimal digit string to a number:

```
for (sum = 0; isdigit(*s); ++s)
    sum = sum * 10 + *s - '0';
```

## See Also

*isalnum*, *isalpha*, *islower*, *isupper*, *isdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isdigit* is packaged in the integer library.

# isgraph

## Description

Test for graphic character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isgraph(int c)
```

## Function

**isgraph** tests whether *c* is a graphic character; *i.e.* any printing character except a space (040 in ASCII).

## Return Value

*isgraph* returns nonzero if *c* is a graphic character. Otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To output only graphic characters:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isgraph(*s))
        putchar(*s);
```

## See Also

*isctrl*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isgraph* is packaged in the integer library.

# islower

## Description

Test for lower-case character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int islower(int c)
```

## Function

**islower** tests whether *c* is a lower-case alphabetic character.

## Return Value

*islower* returns nonzero if *c* is a lower-case character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To convert to upper-case:

```
if (islower(c))
    c += 'A' - 'a'; /* also see toupper() */
```

## See Also

*isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*islower* is packaged in the integer library.

# isprint

## Description

Test for printing character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isprint(int c)
```

## Function

**isprint** tests whether *c* is any printing character. Printing characters are all characters between a space (040 in ASCII) and a tilde '~' character (0176 in ASCII).

## Return Value

*isprint* returns nonzero if *c* is a printing character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To output only printable characters:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isprint(*s))
        putchar(*s);
```

## See Also

*isctrl*, *isgraph*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isprint* is packaged in the integer library.

# ispunct

## Description

Test for punctuation character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int ispunct(int c)
```

## Function

**ispunct** tests whether *c* is a punctuation character. Punctuation characters include any printing character except space, a digit, or a letter.

## Return Value

*ispunct* returns nonzero if *c* is a punctuation character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To collect all punctuation characters in a string into a buffer:

```
for (i = 0; *s; ++s)
    if (ispunct(*s))
        buf[i++] = *s;
```

## See Also

*isctrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *isspace*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*ispunct* is packaged in the integer library.

# isqrt

## Description

Integer square root

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned int isqrt(unsigned int i)
```

## Function

**isqrt** obtains the integral square root of the unsigned int *i*.

## Return Value

*isqrt* returns the closest integer smaller or equal to the square root of *i*, expressed as an **unsigned int**.

## Example

To use *isqrt* to check whether  $n > 2$  is a prime number:

```
if (!(n & 01))
    return (NOTPRIME);
sq = isqrt(n);
for (div = 3; div <= sq; div += 2)
    if (!(n % div))
        return (NOTPRIME);
return (PRIME);
```

## See Also

*lsqrt*, *sqrt*

## Notes

*isqrt* is packaged in the integer library.

# isspace

## Description

Test for whitespace character

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isspace(int c)
```

## Function

**isspace** tests whether *c* is a whitespace character. Whitespace characters are horizontal tab (`'\t'`), newline (`'\n'`), vertical tab (`'\v'`), form feed (`'\f'`), carriage return (`'\r'`), and space (`' '`).

## Return Value

*isspace* returns nonzero if *c* is a whitespace character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To skip leading whitespace:

```
while (isspace(*s))
    ++s;
```

## See Also

*isctrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range `[-1, 255]`, the result is undefined.

*isspace* is packaged in the integer library.

# isupper

## Description

Test for upper-case character

## Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
int isupper(int c)
```

## Function

**isupper** tests whether *c* is an upper-case alphabetic character.

## Return Value

*isupper* returns nonzero if *c* is an upper-case character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To convert to lower-case:

```
if (isupper(c))  
    c += 'a' - 'A'; /* also see tolower() */
```

## See Also

*isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range  $[-1, 255]$ , the result is undefined.

*isupper* is packaged in the integer library.

# isxdigit

## Description

Test for hexadecimal digit

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isxdigit(int c)
```

## Function

**isxdigit** tests whether *c* is a hexadecimal digit, *i.e.* in the set [0123456789abcdefABCDEF].

## Return Value

*isxdigit* returns nonzero if *c* is a hexadecimal digit; otherwise the value returned is zero.

## Example

To accumulate a hexadecimal digit:

```
for (sum = 0; isxdigit(*s); ++s)
    if (isdigit(*s))
        sum = sum * 10 + *s - '0';
    else
        sum = sum * 10 + tolower(*s) + (10 - 'a');
```

## See Also

*isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isupper*, *tolower*, *toupper*

## Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

*isxdigit* is packaged in the integer library.

# labs

## Description

Find long absolute value

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long labs(long l)
```

## Function

**labs** obtains the absolute value of *l*. No check is made to see that the result can be properly represented.

## Return Value

*labs* returns the absolute value of *l*, expressed as an **long int**.

## Example

To print out a debit or credit balance:

```
printf("balance %ld%s\n", labs(bal), (bal < 0) ? "CR" : "");
```

## See Also

*abs*, *fabs*

## Notes

*labs* is packaged in the integer library.

# ldexp

## Description

Scale double exponent

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double ldexp(double x, int exp)
```

## Function

**ldexp** multiplies the double *x* by two raised to the integer power *exp*.

## Return Value

*ldexp* returns the double result  $x * (1 \ll \text{exp})$  expressed as a double floating value. If a range error occurs, *ldexp* returns **HUGE\_VAL**.

## Example

x	exp	ldexp(x, exp)
1.0	1	2.0
1.0	0	1.0
1.0	-1	0.5
0.0	0	0.0

## See Also

*frexp*, *modf*

## Notes

*ldexp* is packaged in the floating point library.

# ldiv

## Description

Long divide with quotient and remainder

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
ldiv_t ldiv(long numer, long denom)
```

## Function

**ldiv** divides the long integer *numer* by the long integer *denom* and returns the quotient and the remainder in a structure of type *ldiv\_t*. The field *quot* contains the quotient and the field *rem* contains the remainder.

## Return Value

*ldiv* returns a structure of type *ldiv\_t* containing both quotient and remainder.

## Example

To get minutes and seconds from a delay in seconds:

```
ldiv_t result;
result = ldiv(time, 60L);
min = result.quot;
sec = result.rem;
```

## See Also

*div*

## Notes

*ldiv* is packaged in the integer library.

# log

## Description

Natural logarithm

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double log(double x)
```

## Function

**log** computes the natural logarithm of  $x$  to full double precision.

## Return Value

*log* returns the closest internal representation to  $\log(x)$ , expressed as a double floating value. If the input argument is less than zero, or is too large to be represented, *log* returns zero.

## Example

To compute the hyperbolic arccosine of  $x$ :

```
arccosh = log(x + sqrt(x * x - 1));
```

## See Also

*exp*

## Notes

*log* is packaged in the floating point library.

# log10

## Description

Common logarithm

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double log10(double x)
```

## Function

**log10** computes the common log of  $x$  to full double precision by computing the natural log of  $x$  divided by the natural log of 10. If the input argument is less than zero, a domain error will occur. If the input argument is zero, a range error will occur.

## Return Value

*log10* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\log_{10} x$ , expressed as a double floating value. If the input argument is less than or equal to zero, *log10* returns zero.

## Example

To determine the number of digits in  $x$ , where  $x$  is a positive integer expressed as a double:

```
ndig = log10(x) + 1;
```

## See Also

*log*

## Notes

*log10* is packaged in the floating point library.

# longjmp

## Description

Restore calling environment

## Syntax

```
#include <setjmp.h>
void longjmp(jmp_buf env, int val)
```

## Function

**longjmp** restores the environment saved in *env* by *etjmp*. If *env* has not been set by a call to *setjmp*, or if the caller has returned in the meantime, the resulting behavior is unpredictable.

All accessible objects have their values restored when *longjmp* is called, except for objects of storage class register, the values of which have been changed between the *setjmp* and *longjmp* calls.

## Return Value

When *longjmp* returns, program execution continues as if the corresponding call to *setjmp* had returned the value *val*. *longjmp* cannot force *setjmp* to return the value zero. If *val* is zero, *setjmp* returns the value one.

## Example

You can write a generic error handler as:

```
void handle(int err)
{
    extern jmp_buf env;
    longjmp(env, err); /* return from setjmp */
}
```

## See Also

*setjmp*

## Notes

*longjmp* is packaged in the integer library.

# lsqrt

## Description

Long integer square root

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned int lsqrt(unsigned long l)
```

## Function

**lsqrt** obtains the integral square root of the unsigned long *l*.

## Return Value

*lsqrt* returns the closest integer smaller or equal to the square root of *l*, expressed as an **unsigned int**.

## Example

To use *lsqrt* to check whether  $n > 2$  is a prime number:

```
if (!(n & 01))
    return (NOTPRIME);
sq = lsqrt(n);
for (div = 3; div <= sq; div += 2)
    if (!(n % div))
        return (NOTPRIME);
return (PRIME);
```

## See Also

*isqrt*, *sqrt*

## Notes

*lsqrt* is packaged in the integer library.

# malloc

## Description

Allocate space on the heap

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *malloc(unsigned int nbytes)
```

## Function

**malloc** allocates space on the heap for an item of size *nbytes*. The space allocated is guaranteed to be at least *nbytes* long, starting from the pointer returned, which is guaranteed to be on a proper storage boundary for an object of any type. The heap is grown as necessary. If space is exhausted, *malloc* returns a null pointer.

## Return Value

*malloc* returns a pointer to the start of the allocated cell if successful; otherwise it returns NULL. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting.

## Example

To allocate an array of ten doubles:

```
double *pd;
pd = malloc(10 * sizeof *pd);
```

## See Also

*calloc*, *free*, *realloc*

## Notes

*malloc* is packaged in the integer library.

# max

## Description

Test for maximum

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
max(a,b)
```

## Function

**max** obtains the maximum of its two arguments, *a* and *b*. Since *max* is implemented as a *builtin* function, its arguments can be any numerical type, and type coercion occurs automatically.

## Return Value

*max* is a numerical rvalue of the form  $((a < b) ? b : a)$ , suitably parenthesized.

## Example

To set a new maximum level:

```
hiwater = max(hiwater, level);
```

## See Also

*min*

## Notes

*max* is an extension to the proposed ANSI C standard.

*max* is a builtin declared in the `<stdlib.h>` header file. You can use it by including `<stdlib.h>` with your program. Because it is a builtin, *max* cannot be called from non-C programs, nor can its address be taken.

# memchr

## Description

Scan buffer for character

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memchr(void *s, int c, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**memchr** looks for the first occurrence of a specific character *c* in an *n* character buffer starting at *s*.

## Return Value

*memchr* returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if no character matches.

## Example

To map *keybuf[]* characters into *subst[]* characters:

```
if ((t = memchr(keybuf, *s, KEYSIZ)) != NULL)
    *s = subst[t - keybuf];
```

## See Also

*strchr*, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

## Notes

*memchr* is packaged in the integer library.

# memcmp

## Description

Compare two buffers for lexical order

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int memcmp(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**memcmp** compares two text buffers, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first buffer starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*; both buffers are *n* characters long.

## Return Value

*memcmp* returns a short integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

## Example

To look for the string “*include*” in name:

```
if (memcmp(name, "include", 7) == 0)
    doinclude();
```

## See Also

*strcmp*, *strncmp*

## Notes

*memcmp* is packaged in the integer library.

# memcpy

## Description

Copy one buffer to another

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memcpy(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**memcpy** copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the buffer beginning at *s1*.

## Return Value

*memcpy* returns *s1*.

## Example

To place “*first string, second string*” in *buf[]*:

```
memcpy(buf, "first string", 12);
memcpy(buf + 13, ", second string", 15);
```

## See Also

*strcpy*, *strncpy*

## Notes

*memcpy* is implemented as a *builtin* function.

# memmove

## Description

Copy one buffer to another

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memmove(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**memmove** copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the buffer beginning at *s1*. If the two buffers overlap, the function performs the copy in the appropriate sequence, so the copy is not corrupted.

## Return Value

*memmove* returns *s1*.

## Example

To shift an array of characters:

```
memmove(buf, &buf[5], 10);
```

## See Also

*memcpy*

## Notes

*memmove* is packaged in the integer library.

# memset

## Description

Propagate fill character throughout buffer

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memset(void *s, int c, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**memset** floods the *n* character buffer starting at *s* with fill character *c*.

## Return Value

*memset* returns *s*.

## Example

To flood a 512-byte buffer with NULs:

```
memset(buf, '\0', BUFSIZ);
```

## Notes

*memset* is packaged in the integer library.

# min

## Description

Test for minimum

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
min(a,b)
```

## Function

**min** obtains the minimum of its two arguments, *a* and *b*. Since *min* is implemented as a *builtin* function, its arguments can be any numerical type, and type coercion occurs automatically.

## Return Value

*min* is a numerical rvalue of the form  $((a < b) ? a : b)$ , suitably parenthesized.

## Example

To set a new minimum level:

```
nmove = min(space, size);
```

## See Also

*max*

## Notes

*min* is an extension to the ANSI C standard.

*min* is a builtin declared in the `<stdlib.h>` header file. You can use it by including `<stdlib.h>` with your program. Because it is a builtin, *min* cannot be called from non-C programs, nor can its address be taken.

# modf

## Description

Extract fraction and integer from double

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double modf(double val, double *pd)
```

## Function

**modf** partitions the double *val* into an integer portion, which is delivered to *\*pd*, and a fractional portion, which is returned as the value of the function. If the integer portion cannot be represented properly in an **int**, the result is truncated on the left without complaint.

## Return Value

*modf* returns the signed fractional portion of *val* as a double floating value, and writes the integer portion at *\*pd*.

## Example

val	*pd	modf(val, *pd)
5.1	5	0.1
5.0	5	0.0
4.9	4	0.9
0.0	0	0.0
-1.4	-1	-0.4

## See Also

*frexp*, *ldexp*

## Notes

*modf* is packaged in the floating point library.

# pow

## Description

Raise *x* to the *y* power

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double pow(double x, double y)
```

## Function

**pow** computes the value of *x* raised to the power of *y*.

## Return Value

*pow* returns the value of *x* raised to the power of *y*, expressed as a double floating value. If *x* is zero and *y* is less than or equal to zero, or if *x* is negative and *y* is not an integer, *pow* returns zero.

## Example

<i>x</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>pow(x, y)</i>
2.0	2.0	4.0
2.0	1.0	2.0
2.0	0.0	1.0
1.0	any	1.0
0.0	-2.0	0
-1.0	2.0	1.0
-1.0	2.1	0

## See Also

*exp*

## Notes

*pow* is packaged in the floating point library.

# printf

## Description

Output formatted arguments to stdout

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int printf(char *fmt, ...)
```

## Function

**printf** writes formatted output to the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., as described below.

*printf* uses *putchar* to output each character.

## Format Specifiers

The format string at *fmt* consists of literal text to be output, interspersed with conversion specifications that determine how the arguments are to be interpreted and how they are to be converted for output. If there are insufficient arguments for the format, the results are undefined. If the format is exhausted while arguments remain, the excess arguments are evaluated but otherwise ignored. *printf* returns when the end of the format string is encountered.

Each *<conversion specification>* is started by the character ‘%’. After the ‘%’, the following appear in sequence:

**<flags>** - zero or more which modify the meaning of the conversion specification.

**<field width>** - a decimal number which optionally specifies a minimum field width. If the converted value has fewer characters than the field width, it is padded on the left (or right, if the left adjustment flag has been given) to the field width. The padding is with spaces unless the field width digit string starts with zero, in which case the padding is with zeros.

**<precision>** - a decimal number which specifies the minimum number of digits to appear for **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, and **X** conversions, the number of digits to appear after the decimal point for **e**, **E**, **f** and **r** conversions, the maximum number of significant digits for the **g** and **G** conversions, or the maximum number of characters to be printed from a string in an **s** conversion. The precision takes the form of a period followed by a decimal digit string. A null digit string is treated as zero.

**h** - optionally specifies that the following **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, or **X** conversion character applies to a short int or unsigned short int argument (the argument will have been widened according to the integral widening conversions, and its value must be cast to short or unsigned short before printing). It specifies a short pointer argument if associated with the **p** conversion character. If an **h** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

**l** - optionally specifies that the **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, and **X** conversion character applies to a long int or unsigned long int argument. It specifies a long or far pointer argument if used with the **p** conversion character. It specifies a long **\_Fract** if used with the **r** conversion character. If the **l** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

**L** - optionally specifies that the following **e**, **E**, **f**, **g**, and **G** conversion character applies to a long double argument. If the **L** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

**<conversion character>** - character that indicates the type of conversion to be applied.

A field width or precision, or both, may be indicated by an asterisk **\*** instead of a digit string. In this case, an int argument supplies the field width or precision. The arguments supplying field width must appear before the optional argument to be converted. A negative field width argument is taken as a **-** flag followed by a positive field width. A negative precision argument is taken as if it were missing.

The **<flags>** field is zero or more of the following:

**space** - a space will be prepended if the first character of a signed conversion is not a sign. This flag will be ignored if space and + flags are both specified.

**#** - result is to be converted to an “alternate form”. For **c**, **d**, **i**, **s**, and **u** conversions, the flag has no effect. For **o** conversion, it increases the precision to force the first digit of the result to be zero. For **p**, **x** and **X** conversion, a non-zero result will have **Ox** or **OX** prepended to it. For **e**, **E**, **f**, **g**, and **G** conversions, the result will contain a decimal point, even if no digits follow the point. For **g** and **G** conversions, trailing zeros will not be removed from the result, as they normally are. For **p** conversion, it designates hexadecimal output.

**+** - result of signed conversion will begin with a plus or minus sign.

**-** - result of conversion will be left justified within the field.

The *<conversion character>* is one of the following:

**%** - a ‘%’ is printed. No argument is converted.

**c** - the least significant byte of the **int** argument is converted to a character and printed.

**d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, **X** - the **int** argument is converted to signed decimal (**d** or **i**), unsigned octal (**o**), unsigned decimal (**u**), or unsigned hexadecimal notation (**x** or **X**); the letters **abcdef** are used for **x** conversion and the letters **ABCDEF** are used for **X** conversion. The precision specifies the minimum number of digits to appear; if the value being converted can be represented in fewer digits, it will be expanded with leading zeros. The default precision is **1**. The result of converting a zero value with precision of zero is no characters.

**e**, **E** - the **double** argument is converted in the style **[-]d.ddde+dd**, where there is one digit before the decimal point and the number of digits after it is equal to the precision. If the precision is missing, six digits are produced; if the precision is zero, no decimal point appears. The **E** format code will produce a number with **E** instead of **e** introducing the exponent. The exponent always contains at least two digits. However, if

the magnitude to be printed is greater than or equal to **1E+100**, additional exponent digits will be printed as necessary.

**f** - the **double** argument is converted to decimal notation in the style **[-]ddd.ddd**, where the number of digits following the decimal point is equal to the precision specification. If the precision is missing, it is taken as 6. If the precision is explicitly zero, no decimal point appears. If a decimal point appears, at least one digit appears before it.

**g, G** - the **double** argument is printed in style **f** or **e** (or in style **E** in the case of a **G** format code), with the precision specifying the number of significant digits. The style used depends on the value converted; style **e** will be used only if the exponent resulting from the conversion is less than -4 or greater than the precision. Trailing zeros are removed from the result; a decimal point appears only if it is followed by a digit.

**n** - the argument is taken to be an *int* \* pointer to an integer into which is written the number of characters written to the output stream so far by this call to *printf*. No argument is converted.

**p** - the argument is taken to be a *void* \* pointer to an object. The value of the pointer is converted to a sequence of printable characters, and printed as a hexadecimal number with the number of digits printed being determined by the field width.

**r** - the **\_Fract** argument is converted to decimal notation in the style **[-]0.ddd**, where the number of digits following the decimal point is equal to the precision specification. If the precision is missing, it is taken as 6.

**s** - the argument is taken to be a *char* \* pointer to a string. Characters from the string are written up to, but not including, the terminating NUL, or until the number of characters indicated by the precision are written. If the precision is missing, it is taken to be arbitrarily large, so all characters before the first NUL are printed.

If the character after ‘%’ is not a valid conversion character, the behavior is undefined.

If any argument is or points to an aggregate (except for an array of characters using **%s** conversion or any pointer using **%p** conversion), unpredictable results will occur.

A nonexistent or small field width does not cause truncation of a field; if the result is wider than the field width, the field is expanded to contain the conversion result.

## Return Value

*printf* returns the number of characters transmitted, or a negative number if a write error occurs.

## Notes

A call with more conversion specifiers than argument variables will cause unpredictable results.

## Example

To print **arg**, which is a double with the value **5100.53**:

```
printf("%8.2f\n", arg);  
printf("%*.*f\n", 8, 2, arg);
```

both forms will output: **05100.53**

## See Also

*sprintf*

## Notes

*printf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *printf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *printf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** modifier is also invalid.

If *printf* encounters an invalid conversion specifier, the invalid specifier is ignored and no special message is generated.

# putchar

## Description

Put a character to output stream

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int putchar(c)
```

## Function

**putchar** copies *c* to the user specified output stream.

You must rewrite *putchar* in either C or assembly language to provide an interface to the output mechanism to the C library.

## Return Value

*putchar* returns *c*. If a write error occurs, *putchar* returns EOF.

## Example

To copy input to output:

```
while ((c = getchar()) != EOF)
    putchar(c);
```

## See Also

*getchar*

## Notes

*putchar* is packaged in the integer library.

# puts

## Description

Put a text line to output stream

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int puts(char *s)
```

## Function

**puts** copies characters from the buffer starting at *s* to the output stream and appends a newline character to the output stream.

*puts* uses *putchar* to output each character. The terminating NUL is not copied.

## Return Value

*puts* returns zero if successful, or else nonzero if a write error occurs.

## Example

To copy input to output, line by line:

```
while (puts(gets(buf)))
    ;
```

## See Also

*gets*

## Notes

*puts* is packaged in the integer library.

# rand

## Description

Generate pseudo-random number

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int rand(void)
```

## Function

**rand** computes successive pseudo-random integers in the range [0, 32767], using a linear multiplicative algorithm which has a period of 2 raised to the power of 32.

## Example

```
int dice()
{
    return (rand() % 6 + 1);
}
```

## Return Value

*rand* returns a pseudo-random integer.

## See Also

*srand*

## Notes

*rand* is packaged in the integer library.

# realloc

## Description

Reallocate space on the heap

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *realloc(void *ptr, unsigned int nbytes)
```

## Function

**realloc** grows or shrinks the size of the cell pointed to by *ptr* to the size specified by *nbytes*. The contents of the cell will be unchanged up to the lesser of the new and old sizes. The cell pointer *ptr* must have been obtained by an earlier *calloc*, *malloc*, or *realloc* call; otherwise the heap will become corrupted.

## Return Value

*realloc* returns a pointer to the start of the possibly moved cell if successful. Otherwise *realloc* returns NULL and the cell and *ptr* are unchanged. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting.

## Example

To adjust *p* to be *n* doubles in size:

```
p = realloc(p, n * sizeof(double));
```

## See Also

*calloc*, *free*, *malloc*

## Notes

*realloc* is packaged in the integer library.

# sbreak

## Description

Allocate new memory

## Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
void *sbreak(unsigned int size)
```

## Function

**sbreak** modifies the program memory allocation as necessary, to make available at least *size* contiguous bytes of new memory, on a storage boundary adequate for representing any type of data. There is no guarantee that successive calls to *sbreak* will deliver contiguous areas of memory.

## Return Value

*sbreak* returns a pointer to the start of the new memory if successful; otherwise the value returned is NULL.

## Example

To buy space for an array of symbols:

```
if (!(p = sbreak(nsyms * sizeof (symbol))))  
    remark("not enough memory!", NULL);
```

## Notes

*sbreak* is packaged in the integer library.

*sbreak* is an extension to the ANSI C standard.

# scanf

## Description

Read formatted input

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int scanf(char *fmt, ...)
```

## Function

**scanf** reads formatted input from the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., as described below.

*scanf* uses *getchar* to read each character.

The behavior is unpredictable if there are insufficient argument pointers for the format. If the format string is exhausted while arguments remain, the excess arguments are evaluated but otherwise ignored.

## Format Specifiers

The format string may contain:

- any number of spaces, horizontal tabs, and newline characters which cause input to be read up to the next non-whitespace character, and
- ordinary characters other than ‘%’ which must match the next character of the input stream.

Each *<conversion specification>*, the definition of which follows, consists of the character ‘%’, an optional assignment-suppressing character ‘\*’, an optional maximum field width, an optional **h**, **I** or **L** indicating the size of the receiving object, and a *<conversion character>*, described below.

A conversion specification directs the conversion of the next input field. The result is placed in the object pointed to by the subsequent argument, unless assignment suppression was indicated by a ‘\*’. An

input field is a string of non-space characters; it extends to the next conflicting character or until the field width, if specified, is exhausted.

The conversion specification indicates the interpretation of the input field; the corresponding pointer argument must be a restricted type. The *<conversion character>* is one of the following:

**%** - a single **%** is expected in the input at this point; no assignment occurs.

If the character after ‘**%**’ is not a valid conversion character, the behavior is undefined.

**c** - a character is expected; the subsequent argument must be of type pointer to char. The normal behavior (skip over space characters) is suppressed in this case; to read the next non-space character, use **%1s**. If a field width is specified, the corresponding argument must refer to a character array; the indicated number of characters is read.

**d** - a decimal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

**e, f, g** - a float is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to float. The input format for floating point numbers is an optionally signed sequence of digits, possibly containing a decimal point, followed by an optional exponent field consisting of an **E** or **e**, followed by an optionally signed integer.

**i** - an integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer. If the input field begins with the characters **0x** or **0X**, the field is taken as a hexadecimal integer. If the input field begins with the character **0**, the field is taken as an octal integer. Otherwise, the input field is taken as a decimal integer.

**n** - no input is consumed; the subsequent argument must be an *int* \* pointer to an integer into which is written the number of characters read from the input stream so far by this call to *scanf*.

**o** - an octal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

**p** - a pointer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *void \** pointer. The format of the input field should be the same as that produced by the **%p** conversion of *printf*. On any input other than a value printed earlier during the same program execution, the behavior of the **%p** conversion is undefined.

**s** - a character string is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *char \** pointer to an array large enough to hold the string and a terminating NUL, which will be added automatically. The input field is terminated by a space, a horizontal tab, or a newline, which is not part of the field.

**u** - an unsigned decimal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

**x** - a hexadecimal integer is expected; a subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

**[** - a string that is not to be delimited by spaces is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *char \** just as for **%s**. The left bracket is followed by a set of characters and a right bracket; the characters between the brackets define a set of characters making up the string. If the first character is not a circumflex '^', the input field consists of all characters up to the first character that is not in the set between the brackets; if the first character after the left bracket is a circumflex, the input field consists of all characters up to the first character that is in the set of the remaining characters between the brackets. A NUL character will be appended to the input.

The conversion characters **d**, **i**, **o**, **u** and **x** may be preceded by **l** to indicate that the subsequent argument is a pointer to long int rather than a pointer to int, or by **h** to indicate that it is a pointer to short int. Similarly, the conversion characters **e** and **f** may be preceded by **l** to indicate that the subsequent argument is a pointer to double rather than a pointer to float, or by **L** to indicate a pointer to long double.

The conversion characters **e**, **g** or **x** may be capitalized. However, the use of upper case has no effect on the conversion process and both upper and lower case input is accepted.

If conversion terminates on a conflicting input character, that character is left unread in the input stream. Trailing white space (including a newline) is left unread unless matched in the control string. The success of literal matches and suppressed assignments is not directly determinable other than via the `%n` conversion.

## Return Value

*scanf* returns the number of assigned input items, which can be zero if there is an early conflict between an input character and the format, or EOF if end of file is encountered before the first conflict or conversion.

## Example

To be certain of a dubious request:

```
printf("are you sure?");  
if (scanf("%c", &ans) && (ans == 'Y' || ans == 'y'))  
    scrog();
```

## See Also

*sscanf*

## Notes

*scanf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *scanf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot read or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *scanf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **f**, **g** and **p**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

If an invalid conversion specifier is encountered, it is ignored.

# setjmp

## Description

Save calling environment

## Syntax

```
#include <setjmp.h>
int setjmp(jmp_buf env)
```

## Function

**setjmp** saves the calling environment in *env* for later use by the *longjmp* function.

Since *setjmp* manipulates the stack, it should never be used except as the single operand in a switch statement.

## Return Value

*setjmp* returns zero on its initial call, or the argument to a *longjmp* call that uses the same *env*.

## Example

To call any event until it returns 0 or 1 and calls *longjmp*, which will then start execution at the function *event0* or *event1*:

```
static jmp_buf ev[2];

switch (setjmp(ev[0]))
{
case 0: /* registered */
    break;
default: /* event 0 occurred */
    event0();
    next();
}
switch (setjmp(ev[1]))
{
case 0: /* registered */
    break;
default: /* event 1 occurred */
    event1();
    next();
}
```

```
        }
    next();
    ...
next()
{
    int i;

    for (; ;)
    {
        i = anyevent();
        if (i == 0 || i == 1)
            longjmp(ev[i]);
    }
}
```

**See Also***longjmp***Notes***setjmp* is packaged in the integer library.

PRELIMINARY

# sin

## Description

Sin

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sin(double x)
```

## Function

**sin** computes the sine of  $x$ , expressed in radians, to full double precision. If the magnitude of  $x$  is too large to contain a fractional quadrant part, the value of *sin* is 0.

## Return Value

*sin* returns the closest internal representation to  $\sin(x)$  in the range  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ , expressed as a double floating value. A large argument may return a meaningless result.

## Example

To rotate a vector through the angle *theta*:

```
xnew = xold * cos(theta) - yold * sin(theta);
ynew = xold * sin(theta) + yold * cos(theta);
```

## See Also

*cos*, *tan*

## Notes

*sin* is packaged in the floating point library.

# sinh

## Description

Hyperbolic sine

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sinh(double x)
```

## Function

**sinh** computes the hyperbolic sine of  $x$  to full double precision.

## Return Value

*sinh* returns the closest internal representation to  $\sinh(x)$ , expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *sinh* returns zero.

## Example

To obtain the hyperbolic sine of complex  $z$ :

```
typedef struct
{
    double x, iy;
}complex;

complex z;

z.x = sinh(z.x) * cos(z.iy);
z.iy = cosh(z.x) * sin(z.iy);
```

## See Also

*cosh*, *exp*, *tanh*

## Notes

*sinh* is packaged in the floating point library.

# sprintf

## Description

Output arguments formatted to buffer

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sprintf(char *s, char fmt,...)
```

## Function

**sprintf** writes formatted to the buffer pointed at by *s* using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. A NUL character is written after the last character in the buffer.

## Return Value

*sprintf* returns the numbers of characters written, not including the terminating NUL character.

## Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
sprintf(buf, "%10f\n", d);
```

## See Also

*printf*

## Notes

*sprintf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *sprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *sprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

# sqrt

## Description

Real square root

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sqrt(double x)
```

## Function

**sqrt** computes the square root of  $x$  to full double precision.

## Return Value

*sqrt* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\sqrt{x}$ , expressed as a double floating value. If  $x$  is negative, *sqrt* returns zero.

## Example

To use *sqrt* to check whether  $n > 2$  is a prime number:

```
if (!(n & 01))
    return (NOTPRIME);
sq = sqrt((double)n);
for (div = 3; div <= sq; div += 2)
    if (!(n % div))
        return (NOTPRIME);
return (PRIME);
```

## Notes

*sqrt* is packaged in the floating point library.

# srand

## Description

Seed pseudo-random number generator

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void srand(unsigned char nseed)
```

## Function

**srand** uses *nseed* as a seed for a new sequence of pseudo-random numbers to be returned by subsequent calls to *rand*. If *srand* is called with the same seed value, the sequence of pseudo-random numbers will be repeated. The initial seed value used by *rand* and *srand* is 0.

## Return Value

Nothing.

## Example

To set up a new sequence of random numbers:

```
srand(103);
```

## See Also

*rand*

## Notes

*srand* is packaged in the integer library.

# sscanf

## Description

Read formatted input from a string

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sscanf(schar *, char *fmt, ...)
```

## Function

**sscanf** reads formatted input from the NUL-terminated string pointed at by **s** using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., in exactly the same way as *scanf*. See the description of the *scanf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers.

## Return Value

*sscanf* returns the number of assigned input items, which can be zero if there is an early conflict between an input character and the format, or EOF if the end of the string is encountered before the first conflict or conversion.

## See Also

*scanf*

## Notes

*sscanf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *sscanf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *sscanf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **f**, **g** and **p**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

# strcat

## Description

Concatenate strings

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcat(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strcat** appends a copy of the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the end of the NUL terminated string at *s1*. The first character of *s2* overlaps the NUL at the end of *s1*. A terminating NUL is always appended to *s1*.

## Return Value

*strcat* returns *s1*.

## Example

To place the strings “*first string, second string*” in *buf[]*:

```
buf[0] = '\0';
strcpy(buf, "first string");
strcat(buf, ", second string");
```

## See Also

*strncat*

## Notes

There is no way to specify the size of the destination area to prevent storage overwrites.

*strcat* is packaged in the integer library.

# strchr

## Description

Scan string for first occurrence of character

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strchr(char *s, int c)
```

## Function

**strchr** looks for the first occurrence of a specific character *c* in a NUL terminated target string *s*.

## Return Value

*strchr* returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

## Example

To map *keystr*[] characters into *subst*[] characters:

```
if (t = strchr(keystr, *s))
    *s = subst[t - keystr];
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strchr*, *strspn*

## Notes

*strchr* is packaged in the integer library.

# strcmp

## Description

Compare two strings for lexical order

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int strcmp(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strcmp** compares two text strings, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first string starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*. The strings must match, including their terminating NUL characters, in order for them to be equal.

## Return Value

*strcmp* returns an integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

## Example

To look for the string “include”:

```
if (strcmp(buf, "include") == 0)
    doinclude();
```

## See Also

*memcmp*, *strncmp*

## Notes

*strcmp* is packaged in the integer library.

# strcpy

## Description

Copy one string to another

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcpy(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strcpy** copies the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the buffer pointed at by *s1*. The terminating NUL is also copied.

## Return Value

*strcpy* returns *s1*.

## Example

To make a copy of the string *s2* in *dest*:

```
strcpy(dest, s2);
```

## See Also

*memcpy*, *strncpy*

## Notes

There is no way to specify the size of the destination area, to prevent storage overwrites.

*strcpy* is implemented as a *builtin* function.

# strcspn

## Description

Find the end of a span of characters in a set

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strcspn(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strcspn** scans the string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character in the string starting at *s2*. It computes a subscript *i* such that:

- **s1[i]** is a character in the string starting at **s1**
- **s1[i]** compares equal to some character in the string starting at **s2**, which may be its terminating null character.

## Return Value

*strcspn* returns the lowest possible value of **i**. **s1[i]** designates the terminating null character if none of the characters in **s1** are in **s2**.

## Example

To find the start of a decimal constant in a text string:

```
if (!str[i = strcspn(str, "0123456789+-")])
    printf("can't find number\n");
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

## Notes

*strcspn* is packaged in the integer library.

# strlen

## Description

Find length of a string

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strlen(char *s)
```

## Function

**strlen** scans the text string starting at *s* to determine the number of characters before the terminating NUL.

## Return Value

The value returned is the number of characters in the string before the NUL.

## Notes

*strlen* is packaged in the integer library.

# strncat

## Description

Concatenate strings of length *n*

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncat(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**strncat** appends a copy of the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the end of the NUL terminated string at *s1*. The first character of *s2* overlaps the NUL at the end of *s1*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be copied, unless the terminating NUL in *s2* is encountered first. A terminating NUL is always appended to *s1*.

## Return Value

*strncat* returns *s1*.

## Example

To concatenate the strings “*day*” and “*light*”:

```
strcpy(s, "day");
strncat(s + 3, "light", 5);
```

## See Also

*strcat*

## Notes

*strncat* is packaged in the integer library.

# strncmp

## Description

Compare two *n* length strings for lexical order

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int strncmp(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**strncmp** compares two text strings, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first string starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be compared, unless the terminating NUL in *s1* or *s2* is encountered first. The strings must match, including their terminating NUL character, in order for them to be equal.

## Return Value

*strncmp* returns an integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

## Example

To check for a particular error message:

```
if (strncmp(errmsg,
            "can't write output file", 23) == 0)
    cleanup(errmsg);
```

## See Also

*memcmp*, *strcmp*

## Notes

*strncmp* is packaged in the integer library.

# strncpy

## Description

Copy *n* length string

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncpy(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

## Function

**strncpy** copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the buffer beginning at *s1*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be copied, unless the terminating NUL in *s2* is encountered first. In that case, additional NUL padding is appended to *s2* to copy a total of *n* characters.

## Return Value

*strncpy* returns *s1*.

## Example

To make a copy of the string *s2* in *dest*:

```
strncpy(dest, s2, n);
```

## See Also

*memcpy*, *strcpy*

## Notes

If the string *s2* points at is longer than *n* characters, the result may not be NUL-terminated.

*strncpy* is packaged in the integer library.

# strupbrk

## Description

Find occurrence in string of character in set

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strupbrk(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strupbrk** scans the NUL terminated string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character in the NUL terminated set *s2*.

## Return Value

*strupbrk* returns a pointer to the first character in *s1* that is also contained in the set *s2*, or a NULL if none does.

## Example

To replace unprintable characters (as for a 64 character terminal):

```
while (string = strupbrk(string, "\\{|}~"))
    *string = '@';
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strchr*, *strcspn*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

## Notes

*strupbrk* is packaged in the integer library.

# strchr

## Description

Scan string for last occurrence of character

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strrchr(char *s,int c)
```

## Function

**strchr** looks for the last occurrence of a specific character *c* in a NUL terminated string starting at *s*.

## Return Value

*strchr* returns a pointer to the last character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

## Example

To find a filename within a directory pathname:

```
if (s = strrchr("/usr/lib/libc.user", '/'))
    ++s;
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strespn*, *strspn*

## Notes

*strchr* is packaged in the integer library.

# strspn

## Description

Find the end of a span of characters not in set

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strspn(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strspn** scans the string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character not in the string starting at *s2*. It computes a subscript *i* such that

- **s1[i]** is a character in the string starting at **s1**
- **s1[i]** compares equal to no character in the string starting at **s2**, except possibly its terminating null character.

## Return Value

*strspn* returns the lowest possible value of **i**. **s1[i]** designates the terminating null character if all of the characters in **s1** are in **s2**.

## Example

To check a string for characters other than decimal digits:

```
if (str[strspn(str, "0123456789")])
    printf("invalid number\n");
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strcspn*, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*

## Notes

*strspn* is packaged in the integer library.

# strstr

## Description

Scan string for first occurrence of string

## Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strstr(char *s1, char *s2)
```

## Function

**strstr** looks for the first occurrence of a specific string *s2* not including its terminating NUL, in a NUL terminated target string *s1*.

## Return Value

*strstr* returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

## Example

To look for a keyword in a string:

```
if (t = strstr(buf, "LIST"))
    do_list(t);
```

## See Also

*memchr*, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strchr*, *strspn*

## Notes

*strstr* is packaged in the integer library.

# strtod

## Description

Convert buffer to double

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double strtod(char *nptr, char **endptr)
```

## Function

**strtod** converts the string at *nptr* into a double. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number, with an optional fraction and exponent. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable inputs match the pattern:

$$[+|-]d*[\.d*][e[+|-]dd*]$$

where **d** is any decimal digit and **e** is the character ‘e’ or ‘E’. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, *\*endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character remaining in the string *nptr*. No checks are made against overflow, underflow, or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*strtod* returns the converted double value. If the string has no recognizable characters, it returns zero.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a double at *d*:

```
gets(buf);
d = strtod(buf, NULL);
```

## See Also

*atoi*, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtoul*

## Notes

*strtod* is packaged in the floating point library.

# strtol

## Description

Convert buffer to long

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long strtol(char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)
```

## Function

**strtol** converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. If base is not zero, characters **a-z** or **A-Z** represents digits in range 10-36. If base is zero, a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” in the string indicates hexadecimal, a leading “**0**” indicates octal, otherwise the string is take as a decimal representation. If base is 16 and a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” is present, it is skipped before to convert. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, *\*endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character in the string *nptr*.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*strtol* returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long *l*:

```
gets(buf);
l = strtol(buf, NULL, 0);
```

## See Also

*atof*, *atoi*, *strtoul*, *strtod*

## Notes

*strtol* is packaged in the integer library.

# strtoul

## Description

Convert buffer to unsigned long

## Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned long strtoul(char *nptr, char **endptr,
                    int base)
```

## Function

**strtoul** converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. If base is not zero, characters **a-z** or **A-Z** represents digits in range 10-36. If base is zero, a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” in the string indicates hexadecimal, a leading “**0**” indicates octal, otherwise the string is take as a decimal representation. If base is 16 and a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” is present, it is skipped before to convert. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, *\*endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character in the string *nptr*.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

## Return Value

*strtoul* returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

## Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long *l*:

```
gets(buf);
l = strtoul(buf, NULL, 0);
```

## See Also

*atof*, *atoi*, *strtol*, *strtod*

## Notes

*strtoul* is a macro redefined to *strtol*.

# tan

## Description

Tangent

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double tan(double x)
```

## Function

**tan** computes the tangent of  $x$ , expressed in radians, to full double precision.

## Return Value

*tan* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\tan(x)$ , in the range  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ , expressed as a double floating value. If the number in  $x$  is too large to be represented, *tan* returns zero. An argument with a large size may return a meaningless value, *i.e.* when  $x / (2 * \pi)$  has no fraction bits.

## Example

To compute the tangent of *theta*:

```
y = tan(theta);
```

## See Also

*cos*, *sin*

## Notes

*tan* is packaged in the floating point library.

# tanh

## Description

Hyperbolic tangent

## Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double tanh(double x)
```

## Function

**tanh** computes the value of the hyperbolic tangent of  $x$  to double precision.

## Return Value

*tanh* returns the nearest internal representation to  $\tanh(x)$ , expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *tanh* returns zero.

## Example

To compute the hyperbolic tangent of  $x$ :

```
y = tanh(x);
```

## See Also

*cosh*, *exp*, *sinh*

## Notes

*tanh* is packaged in the floating point library.

# tolower

## Description

Convert character to lower-case if necessary

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int tolower(int c)
```

## Function

**tolower** converts an upper-case letter to its lower-case equivalent, leaving all other characters unmodified.

## Return Value

*tolower* returns the corresponding lower-case letter, or the unchanged character.

## Example

To accumulate a hexadecimal digit:

```
for (sum = 0; isxdigit(*s); ++s)
    if (isdigit(*s))
        sum = sum * 16 + *s - '0';
    else
        sum = sum * 16 + tolower(*s) + (10 - 'a');
```

## See Also

*toupper*

## Notes

*tolower* is packaged in the integer library.

# toupper

## Description

Convert character to upper-case if necessary

## Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int toupper(int c)
```

## Function

**toupper** converts a lower-case letter to its upper-case equivalent, leaving all other characters unmodified.

## Return Value

*toupper* returns the corresponding upper-case letter, or the unchanged character.

## Example

To convert a character string to upper-case letters:

```
for (i = 0; i < size; ++i)
    buf[i] = toupper(buf[i]);
```

## See Also

*tolower*

## Notes

*toupper* is packaged in the integer library.

# va\_arg

## Description

Get pointer to next argument in list

## Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
type va_arg(va_list ap, type)
```

## Function

The macro `va_arg` is an *rvalue* that computes the value of the next argument in a variable length argument list. Information on the argument list is stored in the array data object `ap`. You must first initialize `ap` with the macro `va_start`, and compute all earlier arguments in the list by expanding `va_arg` for each argument.

The type of the next argument is given by the type name `type`. The type name must be the same as the type of the next argument. Remember that the compiler widens an arithmetic argument to `int`, and converts an argument of type `float` to `double`. You write the type after conversion. Write `int` instead of `char` and `double` instead of `float`.

Do not write a type name that contains any parentheses. Use a type definition, if necessary, as in:

```
typedef int (*pfi)();
/* pointer to function returning int */
...
fun_ptr = va_arg(ap, pfi);
/* get function pointer argument */
```

## Return Value

`va_arg` expands to an *rvalue* of type `type`. Its value is the value of the next argument. It alters the information stored in `ap` so that the next expansion of `va_arg` accesses the argument following.

## Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
    void strput();
    strput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
           "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}

void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
    char *ptr;
    {
        char ptr;
        va_list va;

        if (!ptr)
            return;
        else
            {
                puts(ptr);
                va_start(va, ptr);
                while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
                    puts(ptr);
                va_end(va);
            }
    }
```

## See Also

*va\_end*, *va\_start*

## Notes

*va\_arg* is a macro declared in the *<stdarg.h>* header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including *<stdarg.h>* with your program.

# va\_end

## Description

Stop accessing values in an argument list

## Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_end(va_list ap)
```

## Function

**va\_end** is a macro which you must expand if you expand the macro *va\_start* within a function that contains a variable length argument list. Information on the argument list is stored in the data object designated by *ap*. Designate the same data object in both *va\_start* and *va\_end*.

You expand *va\_end* after you have accessed all argument values with the macro *va\_arg*, before your program returns from the function that contains the variable length argument list. After you expand *va\_end*, do not expand *va\_arg* with the same *ap*. You need not expand *va\_arg* within the function that contains the variable length argument list.

You must write an expansion of *va\_end* as an expression statement containing a function call. The call must be followed by a semicolon.

## Return Value

Nothing. *va\_end* expands to a statement, not an expression.

## Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
    void strput();

    strput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
          "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}
```

```
void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
    char *ptr;
    {
    char ptr;
    va_list va;

    if (!ptr)
        return;
    else
        {
        puts(ptr);
        va_start(va, ptr);
        while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
            puts(ptr);
        va_end(va);
        }
    }
```

### See Also

*va\_arg*, *va\_start*

### Notes

*va\_end* is a macro declared in the *<stdarg.h>* header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including *<stdarg.h>* with your program.

# va\_start

## Description

Start accessing values in an argument list

## Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_start(va_list ap, parmN)
```

## Function

**va\_start** is a macro which you must expand before you expand the macro `va_arg`. It initializes the information stored in the data object designated by `ap`. The argument `parmN` must be the identifier you declare as the name of the last specified argument in the variable length argument list for the function. In the function prototype for the function, `parmN` is the argument name you write just before the `,...`

The type of `parmN` must be one of the types assumed by an argument passed in the absence of a prototype. Its type must not be float or char. Also, `parmN` cannot have storage class register.

If you expand `va_start`, you must expand the macro `va_end` before your program returns from the function containing the variable length argument list.

You must write an expansion of `va_start` as an expression statement containing a function call. The call must be followed by a semicolon.

## Return Value

Nothing. `va_start` expands to a statement, not an expression.

## Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
```

```
void strput();
strput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
        "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}

void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
char *ptr;
{
char ptr;
va_list va;

if (!ptr)
return;
else
{
puts(ptr);
va_start(va, ptr);
while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
puts(ptr);
va_end(va);
}
}
```

## See Also

*va\_arg*, *va\_end*

## Notes

*va\_start* is a macro declared in the `<stdarg.h>` header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including `<stdarg.h>` with your program.

# vprintf

## Description

Output arguments formatted to stdout

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
int vprintf(char *s, char fmt, va_list ap)
```

## Function

**vprintf** writes formatted to the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by pointer *ap*, in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. The *va\_start* macro must be executed before to call the *vprintf* function.

*vprintf* uses *putchar* to output each character.

## Return Value

*vprintf* returns the numbers of characters transmitted.

## Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
va_start(aptr, fmt);
vprintf(fmt, aptr);
```

## See Also

*printf*, *vsprintf*

## Notes

*vprintf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *vprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *vprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

# vsprintf

## Description

Output arguments formatted to buffer

## Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
int vsprintf(char *s, char fmt, va_list ap)
```

## Function

**vsprintf** writes formatted to the buffer pointed at by *s* using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by pointer *ap*, in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. A NUL character is written after the last character in the buffer. The *va\_start* macro must be executed before to call the *vsprintf* function.

## Return Value

*vsprintf* returns the numbers of characters written, not including the terminating NUL character.

## Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
va_start(aptr, fmt);
vsprintf(buf, fmt, aptr);
```

## See Also

*printf*, *vprintf*

## Notes

*vsprintf* is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *vsprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *vsprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.



# Using The Assembler

---

The **cappc** cross assembler translates your assembly language source files into relocatable object files. The C cross compiler calls *cappc* to assemble your code automatically, unless specified otherwise. *cappc* generates also listings if requested. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Invoking **cappc**
- Object File
- Listings
- Assembly Language Syntax
- Branch Optimization
- Old Syntax
- C Style Directives
- Assembler Directives

## Invoking *cappc*

*cappc* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cappc [options] <files>
-a absolute assembler
-b do not optimizes branches
-c output cross reference
-d*> define symbol=value
+e* error file name
-ff use formfeed in listing
-ft force title in listing
-f# fill byte value
-h* include header
-i*> include path
-l output a listing
+l* listing file name
-m accept old syntax
-mi accept label syntax
-o* output file name
-pe all equates public
-pl keep local symbol
-p all symbols public
-t list cycles
-u undefined in listing
-v be verbose
-x include line debug info
-xp no path in debug info
-xx include full debug info
```

### Cappc Option Usage

Option	Description
-a	map all sections to absolute, including the predefined ones.
-b	do not optimize branch instructions. By default, the assembler replaces long branches by short branches wherever a shorter instruction can be used, and short branches by long branches wherever the displacement is too large. This optimization also applies to jump and jump to subroutines instructions.

## Cappc Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-c</b>	produce cross-reference information. The cross-reference information will be added at the end of the listing file. This option enforces the <b>-l</b> option.
<b>-d*&gt;</b>	where * has the form <b>name=value</b> , defines <b>name</b> to have the value specified by <b>value</b> . This option is equivalent to using an <b>equ</b> directive in each of the source files.
<b>+e*</b>	log errors from assembler in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
<b>-ff</b>	use <i>formfeed</i> character to skip pages in listing instead of using blank lines.
<b>-ft</b>	output a title in listing (date, file name, page). By default, no title is output.
<b>-f#</b>	define the value of the filling byte used to fill any gap created by the assembler directives. Default is <b>0</b> .
<b>-h*</b>	include the file specified by * before starting assembly. It is equivalent to an <b>include</b> directive in each source file.
<b>-i*&gt;</b>	define a path to be used by the <b>include</b> directive. Up to 20 paths can be defined. A path is a directory name and is <b>not</b> ended by any directory separator character.
<b>-l</b>	create a listing file. The name of the listing file is derived from the input file name by replacing the suffix by the <b>'.ls'</b> extension, unless the <b>+l</b> option has been specified.
<b>+l*</b>	create a listing file in the text file *. If both <b>-l</b> and <b>+l</b> are specified, the listing file name is given by the <b>+l</b> option.
<b>-m</b>	accept the old Motorola syntax.
<b>-mi</b>	accept label that is not ended with a <b>':'</b> character.
<b>-n*</b>	select the processor type. The default type is the <b>PowerPC</b> processor. The allowed targets are: <b>v</b> <b>VLE</b> mode.

## Cappc Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-o*</b>	write object code to the file *. If no file name is specified, the output file name is derived from the input file name, by replacing the rightmost extension in the input file name with the character 'o'. For example, if the input file name is prog.s, the default output file name is prog.o.
<b>-pe</b>	mark all symbols defined by an <b>equ</b> directive as <b>public</b> . This option has the same effect than adding a <b>xdef</b> directive for each of those symbols.
<b>-pl</b>	put locals in the symbol table. They are not published as externals and will be only displayed in the linker map file.
<b>-p</b>	mark all defined symbols as <b>public</b> . This option has the same effect than adding a <b>xdef</b> directive for each label.
<b>-t</b>	add cycle number. The cycle information will be added at the beginning of each assembly line, enclosed by square brackets [ ] in the listing file; this option implies the <b>-l</b> option to be set.
<b>-u</b>	produce an error message in the listing file for all occurrence of an undefined symbol. This option enforces the <b>-l</b> option.
<b>-v</b>	display the name of each file which is processed.
<b>-x</b>	add line debug information to the object file.
<b>-xp</b>	do not prefix filenames in the debug information with any absolute path name. Debuggers will have to be informed about the actual files location.
<b>-xx</b>	add debug information in the object file for any label defining code or data. This option disables the <b>-p</b> option as only public or used labels are selected.

Each source file specified by *<files>* will be assembled separately, and will produce separate object and listing files. For each source file, if no errors are detected, *cappc* generates an object file. If requested by the **-l** or **-c** options, *cappc* generates a listing file even if errors are detected. Such lines are followed by an error message in the listing.

## Object File

The object file produced by the assembler is a relocatable object in a format suitable for the linker *clnk*. This will normally consist of machine code, initialized data and relocation information. The object file also contains information about the sections used, a symbol table, and a debug symbol table.

## Listings

The listing stream contains the source code used as input to the assembler, together with the hexadecimal representation of the corresponding object code and the address for which it was generated. The contents of the listing stream depends on the occurrence of the **list**, **nolist**, **clist**, **dlist** and **mlist** directives in the source. The format of the output is as follows:

```
<address> <generated_code> <source_line>
```

where *<address>* is the hexadecimal relocatable address where the *<source\_line>* has been assembled, *<generated\_code>* is the hexadecimal representation of the object code generated by the assembler and *<source\_line>* is the original source line input to the assembler. If expansion of data, macros and included files is not enabled, the *<generated\_code>* print will not contain a complete listing of all generated code.

Addresses in the listing output are the offsets from the start of the current section. After the linker has been executed, the listing files may be updated to contain absolute information by the **clabs** utility. Addresses and code will be updated to reflect the actual values as built by the linker.

Several directives are available to modify the listing display, such as **title** for the page header, **plen** for the page length, **page** for starting a new page, **tabs** for the tabulation characters expansion. By default, the listing file is not paginated. Pagination is enabled by using at least one **title** directive in the source file, or by specifying the **-ft** option on the command line. Otherwise, the **plen** and **page** directives are simply ignored. Some other directives such as **clist**, **mlist** or **dlist** control the amount of information produced in the listing.

A **cross-reference** table will be appended to the listing if the **-c** option has been specified. This table gives for each symbol its value, its attributes, the line number of the line where it has been defined, and the list of line numbers where it is referenced.

## Assembly Language Syntax

The assembler *cappc* conforms to the Motorola syntax as described in the document *Assembly Language Input Standard*. The assembly language consists of lines of text in the form:

```
[label:] [command [operands]] [; comment]
or
      ; comment
```

where ‘:’ indicates the end of a label and ‘;’ defines the start of a comment. The end of a line terminates a comment. The *command* field may be an **instruction**, a **directive** or a **macro call**.

Instruction mnemonics and assembler directives may be written in upper or lower case. The C compiler generates lowercase assembly language.

A source file must end with the **end** directive. All the following lines will be ignored by the assembler. If an **end** directive is found in an included file, it stops only the process for the included file.

### Instructions

*cappc* recognizes the following instructions:

add	bunctr	eveqv	evslw	rfi
addc	bunctrl	evextsb	evslwi	rfmci
adde	bunl	evextsh	evsplatfi	rldcl
addi	bunla	evfsabs	evsplatfi	rldcr
addic	bunlr	evfsadd	evsrwis	rldic
addis	bunlrl	evfscfsf	evsrwiu	rldicl
addme	clrlslwi	evfscfsi	evsrws	rldicr
adze	clrlwi	evfscfuf	evsrwu	rldimi
and	clrrwi	evfscfui	evstdd	rlw
andc	cmp	evfscmpeq	evstddx	rlwi
andi	cmph	evfscmpgt	evstdh	rlwimi
andis	cmphi	evfscmplt	evstdhx	rlwinm

b	cmphl	evfscsf	evstdw	rlwnm
ba	cmphli	evfscsi	evstdwx	rotlw
bc	cmpi	evfscsiz	evstwhe	rotlwi
bca	cmpl	evfscstuf	evstwhex	rotrwi
bcctr	cmpli	evfscstui	evstwho	sc
bcctrl	cmplw	evfscstuiz	evstwhox	se_add
bcl	cmplwi	evfsdiv	evstwwe	se_addi
bcla	cmpw	evfsmul	evstwwex	se_and
bclr	cmpwi	evfsnabs	evstwwo	se_andc
bclri	cntlzw	evfsneg	evstwwox	se_andi
bclrl	crand	evfssub	evsubfsmiaawse_b	
bctr	crandc	evfststeg	evsubfssiaawse_bc	
bctrl	crclr	evfststgt	evsubfumiaawse_bclri	
bdnz	creqv	evfststlt	evsubfusiaawse_bctr	
bdnza	crmave	evldd	evsubfw	se_bctrl
bdnzf	crnand	evlddx	evsubifw	se_bgeni
bdnzfa	crnor	evldh	evsubiw	se_bl
bdnzfl	crnot	evldhx	evsubw	se_blr
bdnzfla	cror	evldw	evxor	se_blrl
bdnzflr	crorc	evldwx	extlwi	se_bmaski
bdnzflrl	crset	evlhhesplat	extrwi	se_bseti
bdnzl	crxor	evlhhesplatx	extsb	se_btsti
bdnzla	dcba	evlhhosplat	extsh	se_cmp
bdnzlr	dcbf	evlhhosplatx	extsw	se_cmph
bdnzlrl	dcbi	evlhhosplat	extzb	se_cmphl
bdnzt	dcblc	evlhhosplatx	extzh	se_cmpi
bdnzta	dcbst	evlwhe	fabs	se_cmpl
bdnztl	dcbt	evlwhex	fadd	se_cmpli
bdnztla	dcbtls	evlwhos	fadds	se_extsb
bdnztlr	dcbst	evlwhosx	fcfid	se_extsh
bdnztlrl	dcbstlsl	evlwou	fcmpo	se_extzb
bdz	dcbz	evlwhoux	fcmpu	se_extzh
bdza	divw	evlwhsplat	fctid	se_isync
bdzf	divwu	evlwhsplatx	fctidz	se_lbz
bdzfa	e_addl6i	evlwwsplat	fctiw	se_lhz
bdzfl	e_add2i	evlwwsplatx	fctiwz	se_li
bdzfla	e_add2is	evmergehi	fdiv	se_lwz
bdzflr	e_addi	evmergehilo	fdivs	se_mfar
bdzflrl	e_addic	evmergelo	fmadd	se_mfctr
bdzl	e_and2i	evmergelohi	fmadds	se_mflr
bdzla	e_and2is	evmhegsmfaa	fmr	se_mr
bdzlr	e_andi	evmhegsmfan	fmsub	se_mtar
bdzlr1	e_b	evmhegsmiaa	fmsubs	se_mtctr
bdzt	e_bc	evmhegsmian	fmul	se_mtlr
bdzta	e_bcl	evmhegumiaa	fmuls	se_mullw
bdzt1	e_bl	evmhegumian	fnabs	se_neg
bdztla	e_cmp16i	evmhesmf	fneg	se_not

bdztlr	e_cmph	evmhesmfa	fnmadd	se_or
bdztlrl	e_cmph16i	evmhesmfaaw	fnmadds	se_rfci
beq	e_cmphl	evmhesmfanw	fnmsub	se_rfdi
beqa	e_cmphl16i	evmhesmi	fnmsubs	se_rfi
beqctr	e_cmpi	evmhesmia	fres	se_sc
beqctrl	e_cmpl16i	evmhesmiaaw	frsp	se_slw
beql	e_cmpli	evmhesmianw	frsqrte	se_slwi
beqla	e_crand	evmhessf	fsel	se_sraw
beqlr	e_crandc	evmhessfa	fsqrt	se_srawi
beqlrl	e_creqv	evmhessfaaw	fsqrts	se_srw
bf	e_crnand	evmhessfanw	fsub	se_srwi
bfa	e_crnor	evmhessiaaw	fsubs	se_stb
bfctr	e_cror	evmhessianw	icbi	se_sth
bfctrl	e_crorc	evmheumi	icblc	se_stw
bfl	e_crxor	evmheumia	icbt	se_sub
bfla	e_lbz	evmheumiaaw	icbtls	se_subf
bflr	e_lbzu	evmheumianw	inslwi	se_subi
bflrl	e_lha	evmheusiaaw	insrwi	slbia
bge	e_lhau	evmheusianw	isel	slbie
bgea	e_lhz	evmhogsmfaa	iseleq	sldi
bgectr	e_lhzu	evmhogsmfan	iselgt	slw
bgectrl	e_li	evmhogsmiaa	isellt	slwi
bgel	e_lis	evmhogsmian	isync	srad
bgela	e_lmw	evmhogumiaa	la	sradi
bgelr	e_lwz	evmhogumian	lbz	sraw
bgelrl	e_lwzu	evmhosmf	lbzu	srawi
bgeni	e_mcrf	evmhosmfa	lbzux	srđ
bgt	e_mull2i	evmhosmfaaw	lbzx	srw
bgtā	e_mulli	evmhosmfanw	ld	srwi
bgtctr	e_or2i	evmhosmi	ldarx	stb
bgtctrl	e_or2is	evmhosmia	ldu	stbu
bgtl	e_ori	evmhosmiaaw	ldux	stbux
bgtla	e_rlw	evmhosmianw	ldx	stbx
bgtlr	e_rlwi	evmhossf	lfd	std
bgtlrl	e_rlwimi	evmhossfa	lfdū	stdcx
bl	e_rlwinm	evmhossfaaw	lfdūx	stdū
bla	e_slwi	evmhossfanw	lfdx	stdūx
ble	e_srwi	evmhossiaaw	lfs	stdx
blea	e_stb	evmhossianw	lfsu	stfd
blectr	e_stbu	evmhoumi	lfsux	stfdu
blectrl	e_sth	evmhoumia	lfsx	stfdūx
blel	e_sthu	evmhoumiaaw	lha	stfdx
blela	e_stmw	evmhoumianw	lhau	stfiwx
blelr	e_stw	evmhousiaaw	lhaux	stfs
blelrl	e_stwu	evmhousianw	lhax	stfsu
blr	e_subfic	evmr	lhrbx	stfsux



bnul	efsneg	evmwsdfa	mtmsrd	twlgti
bnula	efssub	evmwsdfaa	mtpmr	twlle
bnulr	efststeg	evmwsdfan	mtspr	twllel
bnulrl	efststgt	evmwsdfmi	mtsrd	twllt
brinc	efststlt	evmwsdfmia	mtsrd	twllti
bseti	eiieio	evmwsdfmiaa	mtsrdin	twlng
bso	eqv	evmwsdfmian	mtsrdin	twlngi
bsoa	evabs	evmwsdf	mulhd	twlnl
bsoctr	evaddiw	evmwsdf	mulhdu	twlnli
bsoctrl	evaddsmiaaw	evmwsdf	mulhw	twlt
bsol	evaddssiaaw	evmwsdf	mulhwu	twlti
bsola	evaddumiaaw	evmwumi	mulld	twne
bsolr	evaddusiaaw	evmwumia	mulli	twnei
bsolrl	evaddw	evmwumiaa	mullw	twng
bt	evand	evmwumian	nand	twngi
bta	evandc	evnand	neg	twnl
btctr	evcmpeq	evneg	nop	twnli
btctrl	evcmpgts	evnor	nor	wait
bt1	evcmpgtu	evnot	not	wrttee
btla	evcmplts	evor	or	wrtteei
btlr	evcmpltu	evorc	orc	xor
btlrl	evcntlsw	evrlw	ori	xori
btsti	evcntlzw	evrlwi	oris	xoris
bun	evdivws	evrndw	rfci	
buna	evdivwu	evsel	rfdi	

The **operand** field of an instruction uses addressing modes to describe the instruction argument. The following example demonstrates the accepted syntax:

nop			; implicit
or	r1,r2		; register
adda	#1,r0		; immediate
and	var,r1		; extended
move.w	(r0)+,r1		; indirect w/postincrement
move.w	-(r0),r2		; indirect w/predecrement
move.l	(11,r6),r7		; indexed
bne	loop		; relative

The assembler chooses the smallest addressing mode where several solutions are possible.

For an exact description of the above instructions, refer to the *PowerPC Reference Manual*.

## Labels

A source line may begin with a label. Some directives require a label on the same line, otherwise this field is optional. A label must begin with an alphabetic character, the underscore character ‘\_’ or the period character ‘.’. It is continued by alphabetic (A-Z or a-z) or numeric (0,9) characters, underscores, dollar signs (\$) or periods. Labels are case sensitive. The processor register names ‘*a*’, ‘*d*’, and ‘*sp*’ are reserved and cannot be used as labels.

```
data1:  dc.b    $56
c_reg:  ds.b    1
```

When a label is used within a macro, it may be expanded more than once and in that case, the assembler will fail with a *multiply defined symbol* error. In order to avoid that problem, the special sequence ‘\@’ may be used as a label prefix. This sequence will be replaced by a unique sequence for each macro expansion. This prefix is only allowed inside a macro definition.

```
wait:   macro
\@loop: btst    #2,PORTA
        bne    \@loop
        endm
```

## Temporary Labels

The assembler allows temporary labels to be defined when there is no need to give them an explicit name. Such a label is composed by a decimal number immediately followed by a ‘\$’ character. Such a label is valid until the next standard label or the *local* directive. Then the same temporary label may be redefined without getting a multiply defined error message.

```
1$:     subq.l  #1,d1
        bne 1$
2$:     subq.l  #1,d2
        bne 2$
```

Temporary labels do not appear in the symbol table or the cross reference list.

For example, to define 3 different local blocks and create and use 3 different local labels named 10\$:

```
function1:
10$:      move.b  var,a1
          beq     10$
          move.b  var2,a2
          local
10$:      move.b  var2,a1
          beq     10$
          move.b  var,a1
          rts
function2:
10$:      move.b  var2,a2
          subq.l  #1,var
          bne    10$
          rts
```

PRELIMINARY

## Constants

The assembler accepts **numeric** constants and **string** constants. *Numeric* constants are expressed in different bases depending on a *prefix* character as follows:

Number	Base
<b>10</b>	decimal (no prefix)
<b>%1010</b>	binary
<b>@12</b>	octal
<b>\$A</b>	hexadecimal

The assembler also accepts numeric constants in different bases depending on a *suffix* character as follow:

Suffix	Base
<b>D, d or none</b>	decimal (no prefix)
<b>B or b</b>	binary
<b>Q or q</b>	octal
<b>0AH or 0Ah</b>	hexadecimal

The suffix letter can be entered upper case or lower case. Hexadecimal numbers still need to start with a digit.

*String* constants are a series of printable characters between single or double quote characters:

```
'This is a string'
"This is also a string"
```

Depending on the context, a string constant will be seen either as a series of bytes, for a data initialization, or as a numeric; in which case, the string constant should be reduced to only one character.

```
hexa:   dc.b   '0123456789ABCDEF'
start:  cmp.b   #'A', d7; ASCII value of 'A'
```

## Expressions

An expression consists of a number of labels and constants connected together by operators. Expressions are evaluated to 32-bit precision. Note that operators have the same precedence than in the C language.

A special label written ‘\*’ is used to represent the current location address. Note that when ‘\*’ is used as the operand of an instruction, it has the value of the program counter **before** code generation for that instruction. The set of accepted operators is:

+	addition
-	subtraction (negation)
*	multiplication
/	division
%	remainder (modulus)
&	bitwise and
	bitwise or
^	bitwise exclusive or
~	bitwise complement
<<	left shift
>>	right shift
==	equality
!=	difference
<	less than
<=	less than or equal
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal
&&	logical and
	logical or
!	logical complement

These operators may be applied to constants without restrictions, but are restricted when applied to *relocatable* labels. For those labels, the **addition** and **subtraction** operators only are accepted and only in the following cases:

```
label + constant
label - constant
label1 - label2
```

### NOTE

The difference of two relocatable labels is valid only if **both** symbols are **not** external symbols, and are defined in the same section.

<b>high(expression)</b>	upper byte
<b>low(expression)</b>	lower byte
<b>page(expression)</b>	page byte

These special operators evaluate an **expression** and extract the appropriate information from the result. The expression may be relocatable, and may use the set of operators if allowed.

**high** - extract the upper byte of the 16-bit expression

**low** - extract the lower byte of the 16-bit expression

**page** - extract the *page* value of the expression. It is computed by the linker according to the **-bs** option used. This is used to get the address extension when bank switching is used.

## Macro Instructions

A **macro** instruction is a list of assembler commands collected under a unique name. This name becomes a new command for the following of the program. A **macro** begins with a **macro** directive and ends with a **endm** directive. All the lines between these two directives are recorded and associated with the macro name specified with the **macro** directive.

```

signex: macro                ; sign extension
        clr     r2           ; prepare MSW
        tst     r1           ; test sign
        bpl    \@pos        ; if not positive
        not    r2           ; invert MSW
\@pos:  endm                ; end of macro

```

This macro is named *signex* and contains the code needed to perform a sign extension of **d1** into **d2**. Whenever needed, this macro can be expanded just by using its name in place of a standard instruction:

```

move.l  lword+4,r1          ; load LSW
signex                                     ; expand macro
move.l  r2,lword           ; store result

```

The resulting code will be the same as if the following code had been written:

```

move.l  lword+4,r1      ; load LSW
clr     r2              ; prepare MSW
tst     r1              ; test sign
bpl     pos            ; if not positive
not     r2              ; invert MSW

pos:
move.l  r2,lword       ; store result

```

A **macro** may have up to 35 *parameters*. A *parameter* is written **\1**, **\2**,... **\9**, **\A**,...**\Z** inside the macro body and refers explicitly to the first, second,... ninth *argument* and **\A** to **\Z** to denote the tenth to 35th operand on the invocation line, which are placed after the macro name, and separated by commas. Each *argument* replaces each occurrence of its corresponding *parameter*. An *argument* may be expressed as a **string** constant if it contains a comma character.

A macro can also handle named arguments instead of numbered arguments. In such a case, the macro directive is followed by a list of argument named, each prefixed by a **\** character, and separated by commas. Inside the macro body, arguments will be specified using the same syntax or a sequence starting by a **\** character followed by the argument named placed between parenthesis. This alternate syntax is useful to concatenate the argument with a text string immediately starting with alphanumeric characters.

The special *parameter* **\#** is replaced by a numeric value corresponding to the number of *arguments* actually found on the invocation line.

In order to operate directly in memory, the previous macro may have been written using the **numbered** syntax:

```

signex:      macro          ; sign extension
clr     d2      ; prepare MSW
move.l  \1+4,d1 ; load LSW
bpl     \@pos   ; if not positive
not     d2      ; invert MSW

\@pos:
move.l  d2,\1   ; store MSW
endm        ; end of macro

```

And called:

```

signex lword      ; sign extend lword

```

This macro may also be written using the **named** syntax:

```

signex:      macro   \value           ; sign extension
                clr     d2              ; prepare MSW
                move.l  \value+4, d1    ; load LSW
                bpl    \@pos           ; if not positive
                not    d2              ; invert MSW

\@pos:
                move.l  d2, \ (value)   ; store MSW
                endm                ; end of macro
    
```

The form of a macro call is:

<b>name&gt;[.&lt;ext&gt;] [&lt;arguments&gt;]</b>
---

The special parameter **\*** is replaced by a sequence containing the list of all the passed arguments separated by commas. This syntax is useful to pass all the macro arguments to another macro or a **repeatl** directive.

The special parameter **\0** corresponds to an extension *<ext>* which may follow the macro name, separated by the period character ‘.’. An extension is a single letter which may represent the size of the operands and the result. For example:

```

table: macro
    dc.\0    1, 2, 3, 4
endm
    
```

When invoking the macro:

```
table.b
```

will generate a table of byte:

```
dc.b    1, 2, 3, 4
```

When invoking the macro:

```
table.w
```

will generate a table of word:

```
dc.w    1, 2, 3, 4
```

The directive **mexit** may be used at any time to stop the macro expansion. It is generally used in conjunction with a conditional directive.

A macro call may be used within another macro definition. A macro definition cannot contain another macro definition.

If a listing is produced, the macro expansion lines are printed if enabled by the **mlist** directive. If enabled, the invocation line is not printed, and all the expanded lines are printed with all the *parameters* replaced by their corresponding *arguments*. Otherwise, the invocation line only is printed.

## Conditional Directives

A **conditional directive** allows parts of the program to be assembled or not depending on a specific condition expressed in an **if** directive. The condition is an expression following the **if** command. The expression cannot be relocatable, and shall evaluate to a numeric result. If the condition is *false* (expression evaluated to zero), the lines following the **if** directive are skipped until an **endif** or **else** directive. Otherwise, the lines are normally assembled. If an **else** directive is encountered, the condition status is reversed, and the conditional process continues until the next **endif** directive.

```
if      debug == 1
move.w #message,d7
jsr    print
endif
```

If the symbol *debug* is equal to 1, the next two lines are assembled. Otherwise they are skipped.

```
if      offset > 8           ; if offset too large
adda   #offset,a1          ; add offset
else                    ; otherwise
addq   #offset,a1          ; use quick instruction
endif
```

If the symbol *offset* is not one, the macro *addptr* is expanded with *offset* as argument, otherwise the *inx* instruction is directly assembled.

Conditional directives may be nested. An **else** directive refers to the closest previous **if** directive, and an **endif** directive refers to the closest previous **if** or **else** directive.

If a listing is produced, the skipped lines are printed only if enabled by the **elist** directive. Otherwise, only the assembled lines are printed.

## Sections

The assembler allows code and data to be splitted in **sections**. A *section* is a set of code or data referenced by a section name, and providing a contiguous block of relocatable information. A *section* is defined with a *section* directive, which creates a new section and redirects the following code and data thereto. The directive **switch** can be used to redirect the following code and data to another *section*.

```

data:  section                                ; defines data section
text:  section                                ; defines text section
start:
    move.l #value,d7                            ; fills text section
    jmp    print
    switch data                                ; use now data section
value:
    dc.b   1,2,3                                ; fills data section

```

The assembler allows up to **255** different sections. A section name is limited to 15 characters. If a section name is too long, it is simply truncated without any error message.

The assembler predefines the following sections, meaning that a *section* directive is *not* needed before to use them:

Section	Description
<b>.text</b>	executable code
<b>.data</b>	initialized data
<b>.bss</b>	uninitialized data

## Includes

The **include** directive specifies a file to be included and assembled in place of the **include** directive. The file name is written between double

quotes, and may be any character string describing a file on the host system. If the file cannot be found using the given name, it is searched from all the include paths defined by the **-i** options on the command line, and from the paths defined by the environment symbol **CXLIB**, if such a symbol has been defined before the assembler invocation. This symbol may contain several paths separated by the usual path separator of the host operating system (‘;’ for MSDOS and ‘:’ for UNIX).

The **-h** option can specify a file to be “included”. The file specified will be included as if the program had an **include** directive at its very top. The specified file will be included before **any** source file specified on the command line.

## Branch Optimization

Branch instructions are by default automatically optimized to produce the shortest code possible. This behaviour may be disabled by the **-b** option. This optimization operates on conditional branches, on jumps and jumps to subroutine.

A *jmp* or *jsr* instruction will be replaced by a *bra* or *bsr* instruction if the destination address is in the same section than the current one, and if the displacement is in the range allowed by a relative branch.

## Old Syntax

The **-m** option allows the assembler to accept old constructs which are now obsolete. The following features are added to the standard behaviour:

- a comment line may begin with a ‘\*’ character;
- a label starting in the first column does not need to be ended with a ‘:’ character;
- no error message is issued if an operand of the **dc.b** directive is too large;
- the **section** directive handles *numbered* sections;

The comment separator at the end of an instruction is still the ‘;’ character because the ‘\*’ character is interpreted as the multiply operator.

## C Style Directives

The assembler also supports C style directives matching the preprocessor directives of a C compiler. The following directives list shows the equivalence with the standard directives:

C Style	Assembler Style
#include "file"	include "file"
#define label expression	label: equ expression
#define label	label: equ 1
#if expression	if expression
#ifdef label	ifdef label
#ifndef label	ifndef label
#else	else
#endif	endif
#error "message"	fail "message"

### NOTE

*The #define directive does not implement all the text replacement features provided by a C compiler. It can be used only to define a symbol equal to a numerical value.*

## Assembler Directives

This section consists of quick reference descriptions for each of the *cappc* assembler directives.

# align

## Description

Align the next instruction on a given boundary

## Syntax

```
align <expression>, [<fill_value>]
```

## Function

The **align** directive forces the next instruction to start on a specific boundary. The **align** directive is followed by a constant expression which must be positive. The next instruction will start at the next address which is a multiple of the specified value. If bytes are added in the section, they are set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option. If **<fill\_value>**, is specified, it will be used locally as the filling byte, instead of the one specified by the **-f** option.

## Example

```
align    3           ; next address is multiple of 3
ds.b    1
```

## See Also

*even*

# base

## Description

Define the default base for numerical constants

## Syntax

```
base <expression>
```

## Function

The **base** directive sets the default base for numerical constants beginning with a digit. The **base** directive is followed by a constant expression which value must be one of **2**, **8**, **10** or **16**. The decimal base is used by default. When another base is selected, it is no more possible to enter decimal constants.

## Example

```
base      8          ; select octal base
moveq    #377,d0    ; load $FF
```

# clist

## Description

Turn listing of conditionally excluded code on or off.

## Syntax

```
clist [on|off]
```

## Function

The **clist** directive controls the output in the listing file of conditionally excluded code. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

The parts of the program to be listed are the program lines which are not assembled as a consequence of **if**, **else** and **endif** directives.

## See Also

*if, else, endif*

# dc

## Description

Allocate constant(s)

## Syntax

```
dc [.size] <expression>[,<expression>...]
```

## Function

The **dc** directive allocates and initializes storage for constants. If *<expression>* is a string constant, one byte is allocated for each character of the string. Initialization can be specified for each item by giving a series of values separated by commas or by using a repeat count.

The **dc** and **dc.b** directives will allocate one byte per *<expression>*.

The **dc.w** directive will allocate one word per *<expression>*.

The **dc.l** directive will allocate one long word per *<expression>*.

## Example

```
digit: dc.b    10, '0123456789'  
       dc.w    digit
```

## Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **fcb** is alias to **dc.b**, and the directive **fdb** is alias to **dc.w**.

# dcb

## Description

Allocate constant block

## Syntax

```
dcb.<size> <count>, <value>
```

## Function

The **dcb** directive allocates a memory block and initializes storage for constants. The size area is the number of the specified value *<count>* of *<size>*. The memory area can be initialized with the *<value>* specified.

The **dcb** and **dcb.b** directives will allocate one **byte** per *<count>*.

The **dcb.w** directive will allocate one **word** per *<count>*.

The **dcb.l** directive will allocate one **long word** per *<count>*.

## Example

```
digit: dcb.b    10,5    ; allocate 10 bytes,  
                    ; all initialized to 5
```

# **dlist**

## **Description**

Turn listing of debug directives on or off.

## **Syntax**

```
dlist [on|off]
```

## **Function**

The **dlist** directive controls the visibility of any debug directives in the listing. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

PRELIMINARY

# ds

## Description

Allocate variable(s)

## Syntax

```
ds [.size] <space>
```

## Function

The **ds** directive allocates storage space for variables. *<space>* must be an absolute expression. Bytes created are set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option.

The **ds** and **ds.b** directives will allocate *<space>* bytes.

The **ds.w** directive will allocate *<space>* words.

The **ds.l** directive will allocate *<space>* long words.

## Example

```
ptlec:      ds.b    2
pteccr:     ds.b    2
chrbuf:     ds.w   128
```

## Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **rmb** is alias to **ds.b**.

# else

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
else
instructions
endif
```

## Function

The **else** directive follows an **if** directive to define an alternative conditional sequence. It reverts the condition status for the following instructions up to the next matching **endif** directive. An **else** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

## Example

```
if      offset > 8      ; if offset too large
adda   #offset,a1      ; add offset
else   ; otherwise
addq   #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
endif
```

## Note

The **else** and **elsec** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

## See Also

*if, endif, clist*

# elsec

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
elsec
instructions
endc
```

## Function

The **elsec** directive follows an **if** directive to define an alternative conditional sequence. It reverts the condition status for the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** directive. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

## Example

```
ifge    offset-127    ; if offset too large
addptr  offset        ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addq    #offset,al    ; use quick instruction
endc
```

## Note

The **elsec** and **else** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

## See Also

*if, endc, clist, else*

# end

## Description

Stop the assembly

## Syntax

```
end
```

## Function

The **end** directive stops the assembly process. Any statements following it are ignored. If the **end** directive is encountered in an included file, it will stop the assembly process for the included file only.

PRELIMINARY

# endc

## Description

End conditional assembly

## Syntax

```
if<cc> <expression>
instructions
endc
```

## Function

The **endc** directive closes an **if<cc>** or **elsec** conditional directive. The conditional status reverts to the one existing before entering the **if<cc>** directives. The **endc** directive applies to the closest previous **if<cc>** or **elsec** directive.

## Example

```
ifge    offset-127    ; if offset too large
addptr  offset        ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addq    #offset,al    ; use quick instructionr
endc
```

## Note

The **endc** and **endif** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

## See Also

*if, elsec, clist, end*

# endif

## Description

End conditional assembly

## Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
endif
```

## Function

The **endif** directive closes an **if** or **else** conditional directive. The conditional status reverts to the one existing before entering the **if** directive. The **endif** directive applies to the closest previous **if** or **else** directive.

## Example

```
if      offset > 8      ; if offset too large
adda   #offset,a1      ; add offset
else   ; otherwise
addq   #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
endif
```

## Note

The **endif** and **endc** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

## See Also

*if, else, clist*

# endm

## Description

End macro definition

## Syntax

```
label: macro
    <macro_body>
endm
```

## Function

The **endm** directive is used to terminate macro definitions.

## Example

```
; define a macro that places the length of
; a string in a byte prior to the string
```

```
ltext: macro
    ds.b    \@2 - \@1
\@1:
    ds.b    \1
\@2:
    endm
```

## See Also

*mexit, macro*

# endr

## Description

End repeat section

## Syntax

```
repeat  
<macro_body>  
endr
```

## Function

The **endr** directive is used to terminate *repeat* sections.

## Example

```
; shift a value n times  
asln: macro  
    repeat \1  
    asl    #1,d7  
    endr  
endm  
  
; use of above macro  
asln    10    ;shift 10 times
```

## See Also

*repeat*

# equ

## Description

Give a permanent value to a symbol

## Syntax

```
label: equ <expression>
```

## Function

The **equ** directive is used to associate a permanent value to a symbol (label). Symbols declared with the **equ** directive may not subsequently have their value altered otherwise the **set** directive should be used. *<expression>* must be either a constant expression, or a relocatable expression involving a symbol declared in the same section as the current one.

## Example

```
false: equ 0           ; initialize these values
true:  equ 1
tablen: equ tabfin - tabsta; compute table length
nul:   equ $0         ; define strings for ascii characters
soh:   equ $1
stx:   equ $2
etx:   equ $3
eot:   equ $4
enq:   equ $5
```

## See Also

*lit, set*

# even

## Description

Assemble next byte at the next even address relative to the start of a section.

## Syntax

```
even [<fill_value>]
```

## Function

The **even** directive forces the next assembled byte to the next even address. If a byte is added to the section, it is set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option. If <fill\_value>, is specified, it will be used locally as the filling byte, instead of the one specified by the **-f** option.

## Example

```
vowtab:dc.b    'aeiou'  
             even    ; ensure aligned at even address  
tentab:dc.w    1, 10, 100, 1000
```

# fail

## Description

Generate error message.

## Syntax

```
fail "string"
```

## Function

The **fail** directive outputs “*string*” as an error message. No output file is produced as this directive creates an assembly error. *fail* is generally used with conditional directives.

## Example

```
Max:    equ     512
        ifge   value - Max
        fail   "Value too large"
```

# if

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>if &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>if &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endif</code>		<code>else</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endif</code>

## Function

The **if**, **else** and **endif** directives allow conditional assembly. The **if** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **not** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endif** or **else** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endif** or **else** directive are skipped.

If the **if** statement ends with an **else** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **if** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **else** and **endif** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **else** and **endif** are assembled. An **else** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```

if      offset > 8      ; if offset too large
adda   #offset,a1      ; add offset
else   ; otherwise
addq   #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
endif

```

## See Also

*else, endif, clist*

# ifc

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifc &lt;string1&gt;,&lt;string2&gt;</code>	<code>orifc &lt;string1&gt;,&lt;string2&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>	<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>	<code>elsec</code>
	<code>instructions</code>
	<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifc**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifc** directive is followed by a constant expression. If *<string1>* and *<string2>* are equals, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifc** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifc** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **ifc** directive.

The **ifc** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
ifc      "hello", \2      ; if "hello" equals argument
move.b  #45,d1           ; load 45
elsec   ; otherwise...
move.b  #0,d1
endc
```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifdef

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifdef &lt;label&gt;</code>	<code>or ifdef &lt;label&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>	<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>	<code>elsec</code>
	<code>instructions</code>
	<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifdef**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifdef** directive is followed by a label *<label>*. If *<label>* is defined, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped. *<label>* must be first defined. It cannot be a forward reference.

If the **ifdef** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **ifdef** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not be in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
ifdef    offset1           ; if offset1 is defined
addptr  offset1           ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addptr  offset2           ; call a macro
endif
```

## See Also

*ifndef, elsec, endc, clist*

# ifeq

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifeq &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>ifeq &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifeq**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifeq** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifeq** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifeq** expression is **equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
ifeq    offset           ; if offset nul
tst     d7               ; just test it
elsec   ; otherwise
addq   #offset,d7       ; add to register
endc
```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifge

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifge &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>ifge &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifge**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifge** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **greater or equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifge** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifge** expression is **greater or equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```

ifge    offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset         ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addq    #offset,a1     ; use quick instruction
endc

```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifgt

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifgt &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>ifgt &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifgt**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifgt** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **greater than** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifgt** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifgt** expression was **greater** than zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
ifgt      offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr   offset          ; call a macro
elsec    ; otherwise
addq     #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
endc
```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifl

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifl &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>ifl &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifl**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifl** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **less or equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifl** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifl** expression was **less or equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```

ifl    offset-127      ; if offset small enough
addq   #offset,a1     ; use quick instruction
elsec  ; otherwise
addptr offset         ; call a macro
endc

```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# iflt

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<pre>iflt &lt;expression&gt; instructions endc</pre>	or	<pre>iflt &lt;expression&gt; instructions elsec instructions endc</pre>
--	----	---

## Function

The **iflt**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **iflt** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **less than** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **iflt** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **iflt** expression was **less than** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
iflt    offset-127      ; if offset small enough
addq   #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
elsec   ; otherwise
addptr offset          ; call a macro
endc
```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifnc

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifnc &lt;string1&gt;,string2&gt;</code>	<code>orifnc &lt;string1&gt;&lt;string2&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>	<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>	<code>elsec</code>
	<code>instructions</code>
	<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifnc**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifnc** directive is followed by a constant expression. If *<string1>* and *<string2>* are different, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifnc** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifnc** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```

ifnc    "hello", \2
addptr  offset           ; call a macro
else    ; otherwise
addq    #offset,a1       ; use quick instruction
endif

```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# ifndef

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<b>ifndef</b> <label>	<b>or</b>	<b>ifndef</b> <label>
<b>instructions</b>		<b>instructions</b>
<b>endc</b>		<b>elsec</b>
		<b>instructions</b>
		<b>endc</b>

## Function

The **ifndef**, **else** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifndef** directive is followed by a label <label>. If <label> is not defined, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped. <label> must be first defined. It cannot be a forward reference.

If the **ifndef** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **ifndef** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not be in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```
ifndef  offset1           ; if offset1 is not defined
addptr  offset2         ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addptr  offset1         ; call a macro
endif
```

## See Also

*ifdef*, *elsec*, *endc*, *clist*

# ifne

## Description

Conditional assembly

## Syntax

<code>ifne &lt;expression&gt;</code>	<code>or</code>	<code>ifne &lt;expression&gt;</code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

## Function

The **ifne**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifne** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **not equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifne** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifne** expression was **not equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

## Example

```

ifne    offset           ; if offset not nul
addq   #offset,a1      ; use quick instruction
elsec
tst    d7              ; just test it
endc

```

## See Also

*elsec, endc, clist*

# include

## Description

Include text from another text file

## Syntax

```
include "filename"
```

## Function

The **include** directive causes the assembler to switch its input to the specified *filename* until end of file is reached, at which point the assembler resumes input from the line following the **include** directive in the current file. The directive is followed by a string which gives the name of the file to be included. This string must match exactly the name and extension of the file to be included; the host system convention for uppercase/lower case characters should be respected.

## Example

```
include "datstr" ; use data structure library
include "bldstd" ; use current build standard
include "matmac" ; use maths macros
include "ports82" ; use ports definition
```

# list

## Description

Turn on listing during assembly.

## Syntax

```
list
```

## Function

The **list** directive controls the parts of the program which will be written to the listing file. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

## Example

```
list ; expand source code until end or nolist
dc.b 1,2,4,8,16
end
```

## See Also

*nolist*

# lit

## Description

Give a text equivalent to a symbol

## Syntax

```
label: lit "string"
```

## Function

The **lit** directive is used to associate a text string to a symbol (label). This symbol is replaced by the string content when parsed in any assembler instruction or directive.

## Example

```
nbr:    lit    "#5"  
        addi   nbr,d0          ; expand as `addi #5,d0`
```

## See Also

*equ, set*

# local

## Description

Create a new local block

## Syntax

```
local
```

## Function

The **local** directive is used to create a new local block. When the *local* directive is used, all temporary labels defined before the local directive will be undefined after the local label. New local labels can then be defined in the new local block. Local labels can only be referenced within their own local block. A local label block is the area between two standard labels or local directives or a combination of the two.

## Example

```
var:    ds.b 1
var2:   ds.b 1
function1:
10$:    move.b  var,a2
        beq     10$
        move.b  var2,a1
        local
10$:    move.b  var2,a2
        beq     10$
        move.b  var,a1
        rts
```

# macro

## Description

Define a macro

## Syntax

```
label: macro
    <macro_body>
endm
```

## Function

The **macro** directive is used to define a macro. The name may be any previously unused name, a name already used as a macro, or an instruction mnemonic for the microprocessor.

Macros are expanded when the name of a previously defined macro is encountered. Operands, where given, follow the name and are separated from each other by commas.

The *<argument\_list>* is optional and, if specified, is declaring each argument by name. Each argument name is prefixed by a `\` character, and separated from any other name by a comma. An argument name is an identifier which may contain `.` and `_` characters.

The *<macro\_body>* consists of a sequence of instructions not including the directives **macro** or **endm**. It may contain macro variables which will be replaced, when the macro is expanded, by the corresponding operands following the macro invocation. These macro variables take the form `\1` to `\9` to denote the first to ninth operand respectively and `\A` to `\Z` to denote the tenth to 35th operand respectively. Otherwise, macro variables are denoted by their name prefixed by a `\` character. The macro variable name can also be enclosed by parenthesis to avoid unwanted concatenation with the remaining text. In addition, the macro variable `\#` contains the number of actual operands for a macro invocation.

The special parameter `\*` is expanded to the full list of passed arguments separated by commas.

The special parameter `\0` corresponds to an extension `<ext>` which may follow the macro name, separated by the period character `'.'`. For more information, see *“Macro instructions”*

A macro expansion may be terminated early by using the **mexit** directive which, when encountered, acts as if the end of the macro has been reached.

The sequence `'\@'` may be inserted in a label in order to allow a unique name expansion. The sequence `'\@'` will be replaced by a unique number.

A macro can not be defined within another macro.

### Example

```

; define a macro that places the length of a string
; in a byte in front of the string using numbered syntax
;
ltext: macro
    dc.b    \@2-\@1

\@1:
    dc.b    \@1 ; text given as first operand

\@2:
    endm

; define a macro that places the length of a string
; in a byte in front of the string using named syntax
;
ltext: macro    \string
    dc.b    \@2-\@1

\@1:
    dc.b    \string ; text given as first operand

\@2:
    endm

```

### See Also

*endm, mexit*

# messg

## Description

Send a message out to STDOUT

## Syntax

```
messg "<text>"  
messg '<text>'
```

## Function

The **messg** directive is used to send a message out to the host system's standard output (STDOUT).

## Example

```
messg "Test code for debug"  
    move.b  d1,#2  
    move.w  (d2),SCCR
```

## See Also

*title*

# mexit

## Description

Terminate a macro definition

## Syntax

```
mexit
```

## Function

The **mexit** directive is used to exit from a macro definition before the **endm** directive is reached. *mexit* is usually placed after a conditional assembly directive.

## Example

```
ctrace:macro
    if tflag == 0
        mexit
    endif
    jsr \1
endm
```

## See Also

*endm, macro*

# mlist

## Description

Turn on or off listing of macro expansion.

## Syntax

```
mlist [on|off]
```

## Function

The **m**list directive controls the parts of the program which will be written to the listing file produced by a macro expansion. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

The parts of the program to be listed are the lines which are assembled in a macro expansion.

## See Also

*macro*

# **nolist**

## **Description**

Turn off listing.

## **Syntax**

```
nolist
```

## **Function**

The **nolist** directive controls the parts of the program which will be **not** written to the listing file until an **end** or a **list** directive is encountered. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

## **See Also**

*list*

## **Note**

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **no1** is alias to **nolist**.

PRELIMINARY

# nopage

## Description

Disable pagination in the listing file

## Syntax

```
nopage
```

## Function

The **nopage** directive stops the pagination mechanism in the listing output. It is ignored if no listing has been required.

## Example

```
xref      mult, div
nopage
ds.b      charin, charout
ds.w      a, b, sum
```

## See Also

*plen, title*

# offset

## Description

Creates absolute symbols

## Syntax

```
offset <expression>
```

## Function

The *offset* directive starts an absolute section which will only be used to define symbols, and not to produce any code or data. This section starts at the address specified by *<expression>*, and remains active while no directive or instructions producing code or data is entered. This absolute section is then destroyed and the current section is restored to the one which was active when the *offset* directive has been entered. All the labels defined in this section become absolute symbols.

*<expression>* must be a valid absolute expression. It must not contain any forward or external references.

## Example

```
offset 0
next:
ds.b 2
buffer:
ds.b 80
size:
move.b (a0,d7),d0 ; ends the offset section
```

# org

## Description

Sets the location counter to an offset from the beginning of a section.

## Syntax

```
org <expression>
```

## Function

<*expression*> must be a valid absolute expression. It must not contain any forward or external references.

For an absolute section, the first *org* before any code or data defines the starting address.

An *org* directive cannot define an address smaller than the location counter of the current section.

Any gap created by an *org* directive is filled with the byte defined by the **-f** option.

# page

## Description

Start a new page in the listing file

## Syntax

```
page
```

## Function

The **page** directive causes a formfeed to be inserted in the listing output if pagination is enabled by either a **title** directive or the **-ft** option.

## Example

```
xref      mult, div
page
ds.b      charin, charout
ds.w      a, b, sum
```

## See Also

*plen, title*

# plen

## Description

Specify the number of lines per pages in the listing file

## Syntax

```
plen <page_length>
```

## Function

The **plen** directive causes *<page\_length>* lines to be output per page in the listing output if pagination is enabled by either a **title** directive or the **-ft** option. If the number of lines already output on the current page is less than *<page\_length>*, then the new page length becomes effective with *<page\_length>*. If the number of lines already output on the current page is greater than or equal to *<page\_length>*, a new page will be started and the new page length is set to *<page\_length>*.

## Example

```
plen      58
```

## See Also

*page, title*

# repeat

## Description

Repeat a list of lines a number of times

## Syntax

```
repeat <expression>
    repeat_body
endr
```

## Function

The **repeat** directive is used to cause the assembler to repeat the following list of source line up to the next **endr** directive. The number of times the source lines will be repeated is specified by the expression operand. The **repeat** directive is equivalent to a macro definition followed by the same number of calls on that macro.

## Example

```
; shift a value n times
asln:  macro
        repeat  \1
        asl     #1,d7
        endr
    endm

; use of above macro
asln 10           ;shift 10 times
```

## See Also

*endr, repeatl, rexit*

# repeatl

## Description

Repeat a list of lines a number of times

## Syntax

```
repeatl <arguments>
    repeat_body
endr
```

## Function

The **repeatl** directive is used to cause the assembler to repeat the following list of source line up to the next **endr** directive. The number of times the source lines will be repeated is specified by the number of arguments, separated with commas (with a maximum of 36 arguments) and executed each time with the value of an argument. The **repeatl** directive is equivalent to a macro definition followed by the same number of calls on that macro with each time a different argument. The repeat argument is denoted **V1** unless the argument list is starting by a name prefixed by a **\** character. In such a case, the repeat argument is specified by its name prefixed by a **\** character.

A **repeatl** directive may be terminated early by using the **rexit** directive which, when encountered, acts as if the end of the **repeatl** has been reached.

## Example

```
; test a value using the numbered syntax
repeatl      1,2,3
             add      #\1,d1           ; add to register
endr
end
```

or

```
; test a value using the named syntax
repeatl      \count,1,2,3
             add      #\count,d1; add to accu
endr
end
```

will both produce:

```
2                                     ; test a value
5 000000 5241 add #1,d1 ; add to register
5 000002 5441 add #2,d1 ; add to register
5 000004 5641 add #3,d1 ; add to register
6                                     end
```

### See Also

*endr,repeat, rexit*

PRELIMINARY

# restore

## Description

Restore saved section

## Syntax

```
restore
```

## Function

The **restore** directive is used to restore the last saved section. This is equivalent to a switch to the saved section.

## Example

```
switch .bss
var:   ds.b   1
var2:  ds.b   1
      save
      switch .text

function1:
10$:   addi   var1,d1
      beq    10$
      move.b d1,var2
function2:
10$:   addi   var2,d1
      suba   var
      bne   10$
      rts
      restore
var3:  ds.b   1
var4:  ds.b   1
      switch .text

      addi   var3,d1
      move.b d2,var4
end
```

## See Also

*save, section*

# rexit

## Description

Terminate a repeat definition

## Syntax

```
rexit
```

## Function

The **rexit** directive is used to exit from a **repeat** definition before the **endr** directive is reached. *rexit* is usually placed after a conditional assembly directive.

## Example

```
; shift a value n times
asln:  macro
        repeat \1
        if \1 == 0
            rexit
        endif
        aslb
        endr
        endm

; use of above macro
asln 5
```

## See Also

*endr, repeat, repeatl*

# save

## Description

Save section

## Syntax

```
save
```

## Function

The **save** directive is used to save the current section so it may be restored later in the source file.

## Example

```
switch .bss
var:   ds.b 1
var2:  ds.b 1
      save
      switch .text

function1:
10$:   addi   var,d1
      beq    10$
      move.b d2,var2
function2:
10$:   addi   var2,d2
      suba   var
      bne   10$
      rts
      restore
var3:  ds.b 1
var4:  ds.b 1
      switch .text

      addi   var3,d1
      move.b d2,var4
end
```

## See Also

*restore, section*

# section

## Description

Define a new section

## Syntax

```
<section_name>: section [<attributes>]
```

## Function

The **section** directive defines a new section, and indicates that the following program is to be assembled into a section named *<section\_name>*. The *section* directive cannot be used to redefine an already existing section. If no name and no attributes are specified to the section, the default is to define the section as a *text* section with its same attributes. It is possible to associate *<attributes>* to the new section. An attribute is either the name of an existing section or an attribute keyword. Attributes may be added if prefixed by a '+' character or not prefixed, or deleted if prefixed by a '-' character. Several attributes may be specified separated by commas. Attribute keywords are:

<b>abs</b>	absolute section
<b>bss</b>	bss style section (no data)
<b>hilo</b>	values are stored in descending order of significance
<b>even</b>	enforce even starting address and size
<b>long</b>	enforce 32 bit relocation

## Example

```
CODE: section .text      ; section of text
lab1: ds.b      5
DATA: section .data     ; section of data
lab2: ds.b      6
      switch CODE
lab3: ds.b      7
      switch DATA
lab4: ds.b      8
```

This will place **lab1** and then **lab3** into consecutive locations in section **CODE** and **lab2** and **lab4** in consecutive locations in section **DATA**.

```
.frame: section .data,even
```

The *.frame* section is declared with same attributes than the *.data* section and with the *even* attribute.

```
.ram: section +long,+even,-hilo
```

The *.ram* section is declared using 32 bit relocation, with an even alignment and storing data with an ascending order of significance.

When the **-m** option is used, the *section* directive also accepts a number as operand. In that case, a labelled directive is considered as a section definition, and an unlabelled directive is considered as a section opening (*switch*).

```
.rom: section 1          ; define section 1
      nop
.ram: section 2          ; define section 2
      dc.b 1
      section 1          ; switch back to section 1
      nop
```

It is still possible to add attributes after the section number of a section definition line, separated by a comma.

## See Also

*switch*

# set

## Description

Give a resettable value to a symbol

## Syntax

```
label: set <expression>
```

## Function

The **set** directive allows a value to be associated with a symbol. Symbols declared with **set** may be altered by a subsequent **set**. The **equ** directive should be used for symbols that will have a constant value. *<expression>* must be fully defined at the time the **equ** directive is assembled.

## Example

```
OFST: set 10
```

## See Also

*equ, lit*

# spc

## Description

Insert a number of blank lines before the next statement in the listing file.

## Syntax

```
spc <num_lines>
```

## Function

The **spc** directive causes *<num\_lines>* blank lines to be inserted in the listing output before the next statement.

## Example

```
spc      5  
title   "new file"
```

If listing is requested, 5 blank lines will be inserted, then the title will be output.

## See Also

*title*

# switch

## Description

Place code into a section.

## Syntax

```
switch <section_name>
```

## Function

The **switch** directive switches output to the section defined with the **section** directive. *<section\_name>* is the name of the target section, and has to be already defined. All code and data following the *switch* directive up to the next *section*, *switch* or *end* directive are placed in the section *<section\_name>*.

## Example

```
switch .bss
buffer:ds.b 512
xdef buffer
```

This will place **buffer** into the *.bss* section.

## See Also

*section*

# tabs

## Description

Specify the number of spaces for a tab character in the listing file

## Syntax

```
tabs <tab_size>
```

## Function

The **tabs** directive sets the number of spaces to be substituted to the tab character in the listing output. The minimum value of *<tab\_size>* is 0 and the maximum value is 128.

## Example

```
tabs      6
```

# title

## Description

Define default header

## Syntax

```
title "name"
```

## Function

The **title** directive is used to enable the listing pagination and to set the default page header used when a new page is written to the listing output.

## Example

```
title "My Application"
```

## See Also

*page, plen*

## Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **ttl** is alias to **title**.

# xdef

## Description

Declare a variable to be visible

## Syntax

```
xdef identifier[, identifier...]
```

## Function

Visibility of symbols between modules is controlled by the **xdef** and **xref** directives. A symbol may only be declared as *xdef* in one module. A symbol may be declared both *xdef* and *xref* in the same module, to allow for usage of common headers.

## Example

```
xdef    sqrt    ; allow sqrt to be called
          ; from another module
sqrt:   ; routine to return a square root
          ; of a number >= zero
```

## See Also

*xref*

# xref

## Description

Declare symbol as being defined elsewhere

## Syntax

```
xref identifier[,identifier...]
```

## Function

Visibility of symbols between modules is controlled by the **xref** and **xdef** directives. Symbols which are defined in other modules must be declared as *xref*. A symbol may be declared both *xdef* and *xref* in the same module, to allow for usage of common headers.

## Example

```
xref otherprog
```

## See Also

*xdef*



# Using The Linker

---

This chapter discusses the **clnk** linker and details how it operates. It describes each linker option, and explains how to use the linker's many special features. It also provides example linker command lines that show you how to perform some useful operations. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Introduction
- Overview
- Linker Command File Processing
- Linker Options
- Section Relocation
- Setting Bias and Offset
- Linking Objects
- Linking Library Objects
- Automatic Data Initialization
- Checksum Computation

- DEFs and REFs
- Special Topics
- Description of The Map File
- Linker Command Line Examples

PRELIMINARY

## Introduction

The linker combines relocatable object files, selectively loading from libraries of such files made with *clib*, to create an executable image for standalone execution or for input to other binary reformatters.

*clnk* will also allow the object image that it creates to have local symbol regions, so the same library can be loaded multiple times for different segments, and so that more control is provided over which symbols are exposed. On microcontroller architectures this feature is useful if your executable image must be loaded into several noncontiguous areas in memory.

### NOTE

*The terms “segment” and “section” refer to different entities and are carefully kept distinct throughout this chapter. A “section” is a contiguous subcomponent of an object module that the linker treats as indivisible.*

The assembler creates several sections in each object module. The linker combines input sections in various ways, but will not break one up. The linker then maps these combined input sections into output segments in the executable image using the options you specify.

A “*segment*” is a logically unified block of memory in the executable image. An example is the code segment which contains the executable instructions.

For most applications, the “*sections*” in an object module that the linker accepts as input are equivalent to the “*segments*” of the executable image that the linker generates as output.

## Overview

You use the linker to build your executable program from a variety of modules. These modules can be the output of the C cross compiler, or can be generated from handwritten assembly language code. Some modules can be linked unconditionally, while others can be selected only as needed from function libraries. All input to the linker, regardless of its source, must be reduced to object modules, which are then combined to produce the program file.

The linker can be used to build freestanding programs such as system bootstraps and embedded applications. It can also be used to make object modules that are loaded one place in memory but are designed to execute somewhere else. For example, a data segment in ROM to be copied into RAM at program startup can be linked to run at its actual target memory location. Pointers will be initialized and address references will be in place.

As a side effect of producing files that can be reprocessed, *clnk* retains information in the final program file that can be quite useful. The symbol table, or list of external identifiers, is handy when debugging programs, and the utility *coj* can be made to produce a readable list of symbols from an object file. Finally, each object module has in its header useful information such as segment sizes.

In most cases, the final program file created by *clnk* is structurally identical to the object module input to *clnk*. The only difference is that the executable file is complete and contains everything that it needs to run. There are a variety of utilities which will take the executable file and convert it to a form required for execution in specific microcontroller environments. The linker itself can perform some conversions, if all that is required is for certain portions of the executable file to be stripped off and for segments to be relocated in a particular way. You can therefore create executable programs using the linker that can be passed directly to a PROM programmer.

The linker works as follows:

- Options applying to the linker configuration. These options are referred to in this chapter as “[Global Command Line Options](#)” on page 267.
- Command file options apply only to specific sections of the object being built. These options are referred to in this chapter as “[Segment Control Options](#)” on page 268.
- Sections can be relocated to execute at arbitrary places in physical memory, or “stacked” on suitable storage boundaries one after the other.
- The final output of the linker is a header, followed by all the segments and the symbol table. There may also be an additional debug symbol table, which contains information used for debugging purposes.

## Linker Command File Processing

The command file of the linker is a small control language designed to give the user a great deal of power in directing the actions of the linker. The basic structure of the command file is a series of command items. A command item is either an explicit linker option or the name of an input file (which serves as an implicit directive to link in that file or, if it is a library, scan it and link in any required modules of the library).

An explicit linker option consists of an option keyword followed by any parameters that the option may require. The options fall into five groups:

<b>Group 1</b>
( <b>+seg</b> <section>) controls the creation of new segments and has parameters which are selected from the set of local flags.
( <b>+grp</b> <section>) controls the section grouping.
<b>Group 2</b>
( <b>+inc</b> *) is used to include files
<b>Group 3</b>
( <b>+new</b> , <b>+pub</b> and <b>+pri</b> ) controls name regions and takes no parameters.
<b>Group 4</b>
( <b>+def</b> <symbol>) is used to define symbols and aliases and takes one required parameter, a string of the form <b>ident1=ident2</b> , a string of the form <b>ident1=constant</b> , or a string of the form <b>ident1=@segment</b> .
<b>Group 5</b>
( <b>+spc</b> <segment>) is used to reserve space in a particular <segment> and has a required parameter

A description of each of these command line options appears below.

The manner in which the linker relocates the various sections is controlled by the **+seg** option and its parameters. If the size of a current segment is zero when a command to start a new segment of the same name is encountered, it is discarded. Several different sections can be redirected directly to the same segment by using the **+grp** option.

*clnk* links the *<files>* you specify in order. If a file is a library, it is scanned as long as there are modules to load. Only those library modules that define public symbols for which there are currently outstanding unsatisfied references are included.

### Inserting comments in Linker commands

Each input line may be ended by a comment, which must be prefixed by a **#** character. If you have to use the **#** as a significant character, you can escape it, using the syntax **\#**.

Here is an example for an indirect link file:

```
# Link for EPROM
+seg .const -b0x40000000 -n .const# start eprom address
+seg .vtext -a .const # constants follow program
+seg .sdata -b 0x10000 # zero page start address
\cxppc\lib\crt.s.ppc # startup object file
mod1.o mod2.o # input object files
\cxppc\lib\libi.ppc # C library
\cxppc\lib\libm.ppc # machine library
+seg .const -b0x3ff4 # vectors eprom address
vector.o # reset and interrupt vectors
```

## Linker Options

The linker accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
clnk [options] <file.lkf> [<files>]
  -bs# bank size
  -e*  error file name
  -l*> library path
  -m*  map file name
  -o*  output file name
  -p   phys addr in map
  -s   symbol table only
  -sa  sort symbol by address
  -sl  output local symbols
  -v   verbose
```

The **output file name** and the **link command file** **must** be present on the command line. The options are described in terms of the two groups listed above; the global options that apply to the linker, and the segment control options that apply only to specific segments.

## Global Command Line Options

The global command line options that the linker accepts are:

### Global linker Options

Option	Description
<b>-bs#</b>	set the window shift to #, which implies that the number of bytes in a window is $2^{**\#}$ . The default value is . For more information, see the section " <a href="#">Address Specification</a> " on page 277.
<b>-e*</b>	log errors in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
<b>-l*&gt;</b>	specify library path. You can specify up to 20 different paths. Each path is a directory name, <b>not</b> terminated by any directory separator character.
<b>-m*</b>	produce map information for the program being built to file *.
<b>-o*</b>	write output to the file *. This option is required and has no default value.
<b>-p</b>	display symbols with physical address instead of logical address in the map file.
<b>-s</b>	create an output file containing only an absolute symbol table, but still with an object file format. The resulting file can then be used in another link to provide the symbol table of an existing application.
<b>-sa</b>	display symbols sort by address instead of alphabetic order in the map file.
<b>-sl</b>	output local symbols in the executable file.
<b>-v</b>	be "verbose".

## Segment Control Options

This section describes the segment control options that control the structure of individual segments of the output module.

A group of options to control a specific segment must begin with a **+seg** option. Such an option must precede any group of options so that the linker can determine which segment the options that follow apply to. The linker allows up to **255** different segments.

**+seg <section> <options>** start a new segment loading assembler section type *<section>* and build it as directed by the *<options>* that follow:

### Segment Control Options Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a*</b>	make the current segment follow the segment <b>*</b> , where <b>*</b> refers to a segment name given explicitly by a <b>-n</b> option. Options <b>-b</b> , <b>-e</b> and <b>-o</b> cannot be specified if <b>-a</b> has been specified.
<b>-b*</b>	set the physical start address of the segment to <b>*</b> . Option <b>-e</b> or <b>-a</b> cannot be specified if <b>-b</b> has been specified.
<b>-c</b>	do not output any code/data for the segment.
<b>-ck</b>	mark the segment you want to check. For more information, see " <a href="#">Checksum Computation</a> " on page 284.
<b>-ds#</b>	set the bank size for paged addresses calculation. This option overwrites the global <b>-bs</b> option for that segment.
<b>-e*</b>	set the physical end address of the segment to <b>*</b> . Option <b>-b</b> or <b>-a</b> cannot be specified if <b>-e</b> has been specified.
<b>-f#</b>	fill the segment up to the value specified by the <b>-m</b> option with bytes whose value is <b>#</b> . This option has no effect if no <b>-m</b> option is specified for that segment.

## Segment Control Options Usage (cont.)

Option	Description										
<b>-i?</b>	define the initialization option. Valid options are: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>-it</b></td> <td>use this segment to host the descriptor and images copies of initialized data used for automatic data initialization</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>-id</b></td> <td>initialize this segment</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>-ib</b></td> <td>do not initialize this segment</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>-is</b></td> <td>mark this segment as shared data</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>-ik</b></td> <td>mark this segment as checksum segment</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>-it</b>	use this segment to host the descriptor and images copies of initialized data used for automatic data initialization	<b>-id</b>	initialize this segment	<b>-ib</b>	do not initialize this segment	<b>-is</b>	mark this segment as shared data	<b>-ik</b>	mark this segment as checksum segment
<b>-it</b>	use this segment to host the descriptor and images copies of initialized data used for automatic data initialization										
<b>-id</b>	initialize this segment										
<b>-ib</b>	do not initialize this segment										
<b>-is</b>	mark this segment as shared data										
<b>-ik</b>	mark this segment as checksum segment										
<b>-k</b>	mark the segment as a root segment for the unused section suppression. This flag is usually applied on the reset and interrupt vectors section, and as soon as it is specified at least once in the linker command file, enables the section suppression mechanism. This option can be used on any other segment to force the linker to keep it even if it is not used.										
<b>-m*</b>	set the maximum size of the segment to * bytes. If not specify, there is no checking on any segment size. If a segment is declared with the <b>-a</b> option as following a segment which is marked with the <b>-m</b> option, then set the maximum available space for all the possible consecutive segments.										

## Segment Control Options Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-n*</b>	<p>set the output name of the segment to *. Segment output names have at most <b>15</b> characters; longer names are truncated. If no name is given with a <b>-n</b> option, the segment inherits a default name equal to its assembler section name.</p> <p>For example, use this option when you want to generate the hex records for a particular PROM, such as:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">+seg .text -b0x2000 -n prom1 &lt;object_files&gt; +seg .text -b0x4000 -n prom2 &lt;object_files&gt; ...</pre> <p>You can generate the hex records for <b>prom1</b> by typing:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">chex -n prom1 file.ppc</pre> <p>For more information, see "<a href="#">The chex Utility</a>" in <b>Chapter 8</b>.</p>
<b>-o*</b>	<p>set the logical start address of the segment to * if <b>-b</b> option is specified or the logical end address if <b>-e</b> option is specified. The default is to set the logical address equal to the physical address. Options <b>-b</b> and <b>-e</b> cannot be specified both if <b>-o</b> has been specified.</p>
<b>-r*</b>	<p>round up the starting address of the segment and all the loaded sections. The expression defines the power of two of the alignment value. The option <b>-r3</b> will align the start address to an 8 bytes boundary. This option has no effect if the start address is explicitly defined by a <b>-b</b> option.</p>
<b>-s*</b>	<p>define a space name for the segment. This segment will be verified for overlapping only against segments defined with the same space name. See "<a href="#">Overlapping Control</a>" on page 278.</p>
<b>-v</b>	<p>do not verify overlapping for the segment.</p>
<b>-w*</b>	<p>set the window size for banked applications, and activate the automatic bank segment creation.</p>

## Segment Control Options Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-x</b>	expandable segment. Allow a segment to spill in the next segment of the same section type if its size exceeds the value given by the <b>-m</b> option. The next segment must be declared <b>before</b> the object causing the overflow. This option has no effect if no <b>-m</b> option is specified for the expandable segment. Options <b>-e</b> and <b>-w</b> cannot be specified.

Options defining a numerical value (addresses and sizes) can be entered as constant, symbols, or simple expression combined them with ‘+’ and ‘-’ operators. Any symbol used has to be defined before to be used, either by a **+def** directive or loaded as an absolute symbol from a previously loaded object file. The operators are applied from left to right without any priority and parenthesis () are not allowed. Such expressions CANNOT contain any whitespace. For example:

```
+def START=0x1000
+def MAXSIZE=0x2000
+seg .text -bSTART+0x100 -mMAXSIZE-0x100
```

The first line defines the symbol `START` equals to the absolute value 1000 (hex value), the second line defines the symbol `MAXSIZE` equals to the absolute value 2000 (hex value). The last line opens a `.text` segment located at 1100 (hex value) with a maximum size of 1f00 (hex value). For more information, see the section “[Symbol Definition Option](#)” on page 275.

Unless **-b\*** is given to set the `bss` segment start address, the `bss` segment will be made to follow the last `data` segment in the output file. Unless **-b\*** is given to set the `data` segment start address, the `data` segment will be made to follow the last `bss` segment in the output file. The `bss` and `text` segments are set to start at zero unless you specify otherwise by using **-b** option. It is permissible for all segments to overlap, as far as `clnk` is concerned; the target machine may or may not make sense of this situation (as with separate instruction and data spaces).

**NOTE**

*A new segment of the specified type will not actually be created if the last segment of the same name has a size of zero. However, the new options will be processed and will override the previous values.*

**Segment Grouping**

Different sections can be redirected directly to the same segment with the **+grp** directive:

**+grp <section>=<section list>** where *<section>* is the name of the target section, and *<section list>* a list of section names separated by commas. When loading an object file, each section listed in the right part of the declaration will be loaded as if it was named as defined in the left part of the declaration. The target section may be a new section name or the name of an existing section (including the pre-defined ones). When using a new name, this directive has to be preceded by a matching **+seg** definition.

**NOTE**

*Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '=' and the commas.*

**Linking Files on the Command line**

The linker supports linking objects from the command line. The link command file has to be modified to indicate where the objects are to be loaded using the following **@#** syntax.

---

**@1, @2,...** include each individual object file at its positional location on the command line and insert them at the respective locations in the link file (**@1** is the first object file, and so on).

---

**@\*** include all of the objects on the command line and insert them at this location in the link file.

---

**Example**

Linking objects from the command line:

```
clnk -o test.ppc test.lkf file1.o file2.o

## Test.lkf:
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
@1
+seg .text -b0x7000
@2

Is equivalent to

clnk -o test.ppc test.lkf
## test.lkf
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
file1.o
+seg .text -b0x7000
file2.o
```

## Include Option

Subparts of the link command file can be included from other files by using the following option:

---

<b>+inc*</b>	include the file specified by *. This is equivalent to expanding the text file into the link file directly at the location of the <b>+inc</b> line.
--------------	---

---

## Example

Include the file “seg2.txt” in the link file “test.lkf”:

```
## Test.lkf:
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
file1.o file2.o
+seg .text -b0x7000
+inc seg2.txt

## seg2.txt:
mod1.o mod2.o mod3.o

## Resultant link file
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
file1.o file2.o
+seg .text -b0x7000
mod1.o mod2.o mod3.o
```

## Private Region Options

Options that control code regions are:

- 
- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| <b>+new</b> | start a new region. A “region” is a user definable group of input object modules which may have both public and private portions. The private portions of a region are local to that region and may not access or be accessed by anything outside the region. By default, a new region is given public access. |
| <b>+pub</b> | make the following portion of a given region public.   |
| <b>+pri</b> | make the following portion of a given region private.  |
-

---

## Symbol Definition Option

The option controlling symbol definition and aliases is:

**+def\***      define new symbols to the linker. The string \* must be of the form:

---

<b>ident=constant</b>	where <i>ident</i> is a valid identifier and <i>constant</i> is a valid constant expressed with the standard C language syntax. This form is used to add <i>ident</i> to the symbol table as a defined absolute symbol with a value equal to <i>constant</i> .
<b>ident1=ident2</b>	where <i>ident1</i> and <i>ident2</i> are both valid identifiers. This form is used to define aliases. The symbol <i>ident1</i> is defined as the alias for the symbol <i>ident2</i> and goes in the symbol table as an external DEF (a DEF is an entity defined by a given module.) If <i>ident2</i> is not already in the symbol table, it is placed there as a REF (a REF is an entity referred to by a given module).
<b>ident=@section</b>	where <i>ident</i> is a valid identifier, and <i>section</i> is the name of a section specified as the first argument of a <b>+seg</b> directive. This form is used to add <i>ident</i> to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the address of the next byte to be loaded in the specified section.
<b>ident=start(segment)</b>	where <i>segment</i> is the name given to a segment by the <b>-n</b> option. This form is used to add <i>ident</i> to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the <i>logical</i> start address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.
<b>ident=end(segment)</b>	where <i>segment</i> is the name given to a segment by the <b>-n</b> option. This form is used to add <i>ident</i> to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the <i>logical</i> end address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

---

---

**ident=pstart(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *physical* start address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

---

**ident=pend(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *physical* end address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

---

**ident=size(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *size* of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

---

**NOTE**

Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '='.

For more information about DEFs and REFs, refer to the section "[DEFs and REFs](#)" on page 286.

## Reserve Space Option

The following option is used to reserve space in a given segment:

---

**+spc <segment>=<value>** reserve <value> bytes of space at the current location in the segment named <segment>.

---

---

**+spc <segment>=@section**

reserve a space at the current location in the segment named *<segment>* equal to the current size of the opened segment where the given *section* is loaded. The size is evaluated at once, so if the reference segment grows after that directive, there is no further modification of the space reservation. If such a directive is used to duplicate an existing section, it has to be placed in the link command file after all the object files.

---

**NOTE**

*Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '='.*

## Section Relocation

The linker relocates the sections of the input files into the segments of the output file.

An absolute section, by definition, cannot and should not be relocated. The linker will detect any conflicts between the placement of this file and its absolute address given at compile/assemble time.

In the case of a bank switched system, it is still possible for an absolute section to specify a physical address different from the one and at compile/assembly time, the logical address **MUST** match the one specified at compile/assemble time.

## Address Specification

The two most important parameters describing a segment are its **bias** and its **offset**, respectively its physical and logical start addresses. In nonsegmented architectures there is no distinction between *bias* and *offset*. The *bias* is the address of the location in memory where the segment is relocated to run. The *offset* of a segment will be equal to the *bias*. In this case you must set only the *bias*. The linker sets the *offset* automatically.

## Overlapping Control

The linker is verifying that a segment does not overlap any other one, by checking the physical addresses (*bias*). This control can be locally disabled for one segment by using the **-v** option. For targets implementing separated address spaces (such as bank switching), the linker allows several segments to be isolated from the other ones, by giving them a *space* name with the **-s** option. In such a case, a segment in a named space is checked only against the other segments of the same space. The unnamed segments are checked together.

## Setting Bias and Offset

The bias and offset of a segment are controlled by the **-b\*** option and **-o\*** option. The rules for dealing with these options are described below.

### Setting the Bias

If the **-b\*** option is specified, the bias is set to the value specified by \*. Otherwise, the bias is set to the end of the last segment of the same name. If the **-e\*** option is specified, the bias is set to value obtain by subtracting the segment size to the value specified by \*.

### Setting the Offset

If the **-o\*** option is specified, the offset is set to the value specified by \*. Otherwise, the offset is set equal to the bias.

### Using Default Placement

If none of **-b**, **-e** or **-o** options is specified, the segment may be placed *after* another one, by using the **-a\*** option, where \* is the name of another segment. Otherwise, the linker will try to use a default placement based on the segment name. The compiler produces specific sections for code (*.text*) and data (*.data*, *.bss*, *.bsect*). By default, *.text* and *.bsect* segments start at zero, *.data* segment follows the latest *.text* segment, and *.bss* segment follows the latest *.data* segment. Note that there is no default placement for the constants segment *.const*.

## Linking Objects

A new segment is built by concatenating the corresponding sections of the input object modules in the order the linker encounters them. As each input section is added to the output segment, it is adjusted to be relocated relative to the end portion of the output segment so far constructed. The first input object module encountered is relocated relative to a value that can be specified to the linker. The size of the output *bss* segment is the sum of the sizes of the input *bss* sections.

Unless the **-v** option has been specified on a segment definition, the linker checks that the segment physical address range does not overlap any other segment of the application. Logical addresses are not checked as bank switching creates several segments starting at the same logical address.

## Linking Library Objects

The linker will selectively include modules from a library when outstanding references to member functions are encountered. The library file must be placed **after** all objects that may call its modules to avoid unresolved references. The standard ANSI libraries are provided in three versions to provide the level of support that your application needs. This can save a significant amount of code space and execution time when full ANSI double precision floating point support is not needed. The first letter after “*lib*” in each library file denotes the library type (**d** for double, **f** for single precision, and **i** for integer). See below.

---

<b>libd.ppc</b>	Double Precision Library provides ANSI double precision floating point support. Link this library <b>before</b> the other libraries when needed.
-----------------	--

---

**libf.ppc**

Single Precision Library. Used in conjunction with the **+sprec** option to force all floats (even variables declared as doubles) to single precision. This library is used for applications where only single precision floating point support is needed. This library is significantly smaller and faster than the double precision. Link this library **before** the other libraries when **only** single precision floats are used.

**NOTE**

*The **+sprec** compiler option **MUST** be used if you want to use the Single Precision library in order to suppress normal ANSI float to double promotions.*

**libi.ppc**

Integer only Library. This library is designed for applications where **no** floating point is used. Floats can still be used for arithmetic but not with the standard library. Link this library **before** the other libraries when only integer libraries are needed.

	Machine Library	Integer Only Library	Single Precision Floats	Double Precision Floats
Standard	Libm.ppc	libi.ppc	libf.ppc	libd.ppc

**Library Order**

You should link your application with the libraries in the following orders:

Integer Only Application	Single Precision Float Application	Double Precision Float Application
libi.ppc	libf.ppc	libd.ppc
libm.ppc	libi.ppc	libi.ppc
	libm.ppc	libm.ppc

For more information, see “[Linker Command Line Examples](#)” on page 294.

## Libraries Setup Search Paths

The linker uses the environment variable **CXLIB** to search for objects and library files. If you don't specify the full path to the objects and/or libraries in the link command file AND they are not found in the local directory, the linker will then search all paths specified by the **CXLIB** environment variable. This allows you to specify just the names of the objects and libraries in your link command file. For example, setting the **CXLIB** environment variable to the **C:\COSMIC\LIB** directory is done as follow:

```
C>set CXLIB=C:\COSMIC\LIB
```

PRELIMINARY

## Automatic Data Initialization

The linker is able to configure the executable for an automatic data initialization. This mechanism is initiated automatically when the linker finds the symbol `__idesc` in the symbol table, as an *undefined* symbol. `clnk` first locates a segment behind which it will add an image of the data, so called the *host* segment. The default behaviour is to select the **first** *.text* segment in the executable file, but you can override this by marking one segment with the **-it** option.

Then, `clnk` looks in the executable file for initialized segments. All the segments *.data* and *.bss* are selected by default, unless disabled explicitly by the **-ib** option. Otherwise, renamed segments may also be selected by using the **-id** option. The **-id** option cannot be specified on a bss segment, default or renamed. Once all the selected segments are located, `clnk` builds a descriptor containing the starting address and length of each such segment, and moves the descriptor and the selected segments to the end of the *host* segment, without relocating the content of the selected segments.

For more information, see “[Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 2** and “[Initializing data in RAM](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

### Descriptor Format

The created descriptor has the following format:

```
dc.w start_ram_address; starting address of the
    ; first image in prom
; for each segment:
dc. flag           ; segment type
dc.w start_ram_address ; start address of segment in ram
dc.w end_prom_address ; address of last data byte
    ; plus one in prom
; after the last segment:
dc. 0
```

The flag is used to detect the end of the descriptor, and also to specify a type for the data segment. The actual value is equal to the code of the first significant letter in the segment name.

If the RAM segment has been created using banked addresses (**-b** and **-o** values), the RAM start address is described using two words, the first

giving the page value for that segment and the second giving the matching value for the start address in that space. A segment description is displayed as:

```
dc. flag                ; segment type
dc.w paged_ram_address  ; paged value of ram start address
dc.w start_ram_address  ; start address of segment in ram
dc.w end_prom_address   ; address of last data byte
```

The end address in PROM of one segment gives also the starting address in prom of the following segment, if any.

The address of the descriptor will be assigned to the symbol `__idesc__`, which is used by the `crt.s` startup routine. So all this mechanism will be activated just by linking the `crt.ppc` file with the application, or by referencing the symbol `__idesc__` in your own startup file.

If the `host` segment has been opened with a `-m` option giving a maximum size, `clnk` will check that there is enough space to move all the selected segments.

## Checksum Computation

This feature is activated by the detection of the symbol `__ckdesc__` as an undefined symbol. This is practically done by calling one of the provided checksum functions which uses that symbol and returns `0` if the checksum is correct. These functions are provided in the integer library and are the following:

<code>__checksum()</code>	check a 8 bit checksum stored once for all the selected segments.
<code>__checksumx()</code>	check a 8 bit checksum stored for every selected segments. This method allows a segment to be dynamically reloaded by updating the corresponding CRC byte.
<code>__checksum16()</code>	check a 16 bit checksum stored once for all the selected segments.
<code>__checksum16x()</code>	check a 16 bit checksum stored for every selected segments. This method allows a segment to be dynamically reloaded by updating the corresponding CRC word.

You then have to update the link command file in two ways:

- 1) Mark the segments (usually code segments) you want to check, by using the `-ck` option on the `+seg` line. Note that you need only to mark the first segment of a hooked list, meaning that if a segment is declared with `-a` option as following a segment which is marked with the `-ck` option, it will automatically inherit the `-ck` marker and will be also checked. Note also that if you are using the automatic initialization mechanism, and if the code segment hosting the init descriptor (`-it`) is also marked with `-ck`, the init segment and ALL the initialization copy segments will also be checked.
- 2) Create an empty segment which will contain the checksum descriptor. This has to be an empty segment, located wherever you want with a `-b` or `-a` option. This segment will NOT be checked, even if marked or hooked to a marked segment. The linker will fill this segment with a data descriptor allowing the checking function to scan all the requested segments and compute the final `crc`. This segment

has to be specially marked with the option **-ik** to allow the linker to recognize it as the checksum segment.

```
#          LINKER EXAMPLE FOR CHECKSUM IMPLEMENTATION
#
# mark the first segment of an attached list with -ck
#
+seg .text -b 0x8000 -n code -ck# this segment is marked
+seg .const -a code -n const# this one is implicitly marked
#
# create an empty segment for checksum table marked with -ik
#
+seg .cksum -a const -n cksum -ik # checksum segment
#
# remaining part should contain the verification code
#
+seg .data -b 0x100
crtsi.ppc
test.o
libi.ppc
libm.ppc
+def __memory=@.bss
```

The descriptor built by the linker is a list of entries followed by the expected CRC value, only once if functions `_checksum()` or `_checksum16()` are called, or after each entry if functions `_checksumx()` or `_checksum16x()` are called. An entry contains a flag byte, a start address and an end address. The flag byte is non-zero, and is *or'ed* with **0x80** if the start address contains a bank value (two words, page first then start address), otherwise it is just one word with the start address. The end address is always one word. The last entry is always followed by a nul byte (seen as an ending flag), and immediately followed by the expected CRC if functions `_checksum()` or `_checksum16()` are called. The linker compresses the list of entries by creating only one entry for contiguous segments (as long as they are in the same space (**-s\*** option) and in the same bank/page).

The current linker implements only one algorithm. Starting with zero, the CRC byte/word is first rotated one bit left (a true bit rotation), then xor'ed with the code byte. The CRC values stored in the checksum descriptor are the one's complement value of the expected CRC.

## DEFs and REFs

The linker builds a new symbol table based on the symbol tables in the input object modules, but it is not a simple concatenation with adjustments. There are two basic type of symbols that the linker puts into its internal symbol table: **REFs** and **DEFs**. DEFs are symbols that are defined in the object module in which they occur. REFs are symbols that are referenced by the object module in which they occur, but are not defined there.

The linker also builds a debug symbol table based on the debug symbol tables in any of the input object modules. It builds the debug symbol table by concatenating the debug symbol tables of each input object module in the order it encounters them. If debugging is not enabled for any of input object module, the debug symbol table will be of zero length.

An incoming REF is added to the symbol table as a REF if that symbol is not already entered in the symbol table; otherwise, it is ignored (that reference has already been satisfied by a DEF or the reference has already been noted). An incoming DEF is added to the symbol table as a DEF if that symbol is not already entered in the symbol table; its value is adjusted to reflect how the linker is relocating the input object module in which it occurred. If it is present as a REF, the entry is changed to a DEF and the symbol's adjusted value is entered in the symbol table entry. If it is present as a DEF, an error occurs (multiply defined symbol).

When the linker is processing a library, an object module in the library becomes an input object module to the linker only if it has at least one DEF which satisfies some outstanding REF in the linker's internal symbol table. Thus, the simplest use of *clnk* is to combine two files and check that no unused references remain.

The executable file created by the linker must have no REFs in its symbol table. Otherwise, the linker emits the error message “*undefined symbol*” and returns failure.

## Special Topics

This section explains some special linker capabilities that may have limited applicability for building most kinds of microcontroller applications.

### Private Name Regions

*Private name regions* are used when you wish to link together a group of files and expose only some to the symbol names that they define. This lets you link a larger program in groups without worrying about names intended only for local usage in one group colliding with identical names intended to be local to another group. Private name regions let you keep names truly local, so the problem of name space pollution is much more manageable.

An explicit use for private name regions in a PowerPC environment is in building a paged program with duplication of the most used library functions in each page, in order to avoid extra page commutation. To avoid complaints when multiple copies of the same file redefine symbols, each such contribution is placed in a private name region accessible only to other files in the same page.

The basic sequence of commands for each island looks like:

```
+new <public files> +pri <private libraries>
```

Any symbols defined in *<public files>* are known outside this private name region. Any symbols defined in *<private libraries>* are known only within this region; hence they may safely be redefined as private to other regions as well.

#### NOTE

*All symbols defined in a private region are local symbols and will not appear in the symbol table of the output file.*

### Renaming Symbols

At times it may be desirable to provide a symbol with an alias and to hide the original name (*i.e.*, to prevent its definition from being used by the linker as a DEF which satisfies REFs to that symbol name). As an

example, suppose that the function *func* in the C library provided with the compiler does not do everything that is desired of it for some special application. There are three methods of handling this situation (we will ignore the alternative of trying to live with the existing function's deficiencies).

The first method is to write a new version of the function that performs as required and link it into the program being built before linking in the libraries. This will cause the new definition of *func* to satisfy any references to that function, so the linker does not include the version from the library because it is not needed. This method has two major drawbacks: first, a new function must be written and debugged to provide something which basically already exists; second, the details of exactly what the function must do and how it must do it may not be available, thus preventing a proper implementation of the function.

The second approach is to write a new function, say *my\_func*, which does the extra processing required and then calls the standard function *func*. This approach will generally work, unless the original function *func* is called by other functions in the libraries. In that case, the extra function behavior cannot occur when *func* is called from library functions, since it is actually *my\_func* that performs it.

The third approach is to use the aliasing capabilities of the linker. Like the second method, a new function will be written which performs the new behavior and then calls the old function. The twist is to give the old function a new name and hide its old name. Then the new function is given the old function's name and, when it calls the old function, it uses the new name, or alias, for that function. The following linker script provides a specific example of this technique for the function *func*:

```
line 1 +seg .text -b 0x1000
line 2 +seg .data -b0
line 3 +new
line 4 Crts.xx
line 5 +def _oldfunc=_func
line 6 +pri func.o
line 7 +new
line 8 prog.o newfunc.o
line 9 <libraries>
```

**NOTE**

The function name *func* as referenced here is the name as seen by the C programmer. The name which is used in the linker for purposes of aliasing is the name as seen at the object module level. For more information on this transformation, see the section “[Interfacing C to Assembly Language](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

The main thing to note here is that *func.o* and *new\_func.o* both define a (different) function named *func*. The second function *func* defined in *newfunc.o* calls the old *func* function by its alias *oldfunc*.

Name regions provide limited scope control for symbol names. The **+new** command starts a new name region, which will be in effect until the next **+new** command. Within a region there are public and private name spaces. These are entered by the **+pub** and **+pri** commands; by default, **+new** starts in the public name space.

**Lines 1,2** are the basic linker commands for setting up a separate I/D program. Note that there may be other options required here, either by the system itself or by the user.

**Line 3** starts a new region, initially in the public name space.

**Line 4** specifies the startup code for the system being used.

**Line 5** establishes the symbol *\_oldfunc* as an alias for the symbol *\_func*. The symbol *\_oldfunc* is entered in the symbol table as a public definition. The symbol *\_func* is entered as a private reference in the current region.

**Line 6** switches to the private name space in the current region. Then *func.o* is linked and provides a definition (private, of course) which satisfies the reference to *\_func*.

**Line 7** starts a new name region, which is in the public name space by default. Now no reference to the symbol *\_func* can reach the definition created on **Line 6**. That definition can only be reached now by using the symbol *\_oldfunc*, which is publicly defined as an alias for it.

**Line 8** links the user program and the module *newfunc.o*, which provides a new (and public) definition of *\_func*. In this module the old version is accessed by its alias. This new version will satisfy all references to *\_func* made in *prog.o* and the libraries.

**Line 9** links in the required libraries.

The rules governing which name space a symbol belongs to are as follows:

- Any symbol definition in the public space is public and satisfies all outstanding and future references to that symbol.
- Any symbol definition in the private space of the current region is private and will satisfy any private reference in the current region.
- All private definitions of a symbol must occur before a public definition of that symbol. After a public definition of a symbol, any other definition of that symbol will cause a “*multiply defined symbol*” error.
- Any number of private definitions are allowed, but each must be in a separate region to prevent a multiply defined symbol error.
- Any new reference is associated with the region in which the reference is made. It can be satisfied by a private definition in that region, or by a public definition. A previous definition of that symbol will satisfy the reference if that definition is public, or if the definition is private and the reference is made in the same region as the definition.
- If a new reference to a symbol occurs, and that symbol still has an outstanding unsatisfied reference made in another region, then that symbol is marked as requiring a public definition to satisfy it.
- Any definition of a symbol must satisfy all outstanding references to that symbol; therefore, a private definition of a symbol which requires a public definition causes a blocked symbol reference error.

- No symbol reference can “reach” any definition made earlier than the most recent definition.

## Absolute Symbol Tables

*Absolute Symbol tables* are used to export symbols from one application to another, to share common functions for instance, or to use functions already built in a ROM, from an application downloaded into RAM. The linker option **-s** will modify the output file in order to contain only a symbol table, without any code, but still with an object file format, by using the same command file used to build the application itself. All symbols are flagged as *absolute* symbols. This file can be used in another link, and will then transmit its symbol table, allowing another application to use those symbols as *externals*. Note that the linker does not produce any map even if requested, when used with the **-s** option.

The basic sequence of commands looks like:

```
clnk -o appli.ppc -m appli.map appli.lkf
clnk -o appli.sym -s appli.lkf
```

The first link builds the application itself using the *appli.lkf* command file. The second link uses the same command file and creates an object file containing only an absolute symbol table. This file can then be used as an input object file in any other link command file.

## Description of The Map File

The linker can output a map file by using the **-m** option. The map file contains 4 sections: the *Segment* section, the *Modules* section, the *Stack Usage* section and the *Symbols* section.

**Segment** Describe the different segments which compose the application, specifying for each of them: the start address (in hexa), the end address (in hexa), the length (in decimal), and the name of the segment. Note that the end value is the address of the byte following the last one of the segment, meaning that an empty segment will have the same start and end addresses. If a segment is initialized, it is displayed twice, the first time with its final address, the second time with the address of the image copy.

**Modules** List all the modules which compose the application, giving for each the description of all the defined sections with the same format as in the *Segment* section. If an object has been assembled with the **-pl** option, local symbols are displayed just after the module description.

**Stack Usage** Describe the amount of memory needed for the stack. Each function of the application is listed by its name, followed by a '>' character indicating that this function is not called by any other one (the *main* function, *interrupt* functions, *task* entries...). The first number is the total size of the stack used by the function including all the internal calls. The second number between braces shows the stack need for that function alone. The entry may be flagged by the keyword "**Recursive**" meaning that this function is itself recursive or is calling directly or indirectly a recursive function, and that the total stack space displayed is not accurate. The linker may detect potential but not actual recursive functions when such functions are called by pointer. The linker displays at the end of the list a total stack size assuming interrupt functions cannot be themselves interrupted. Interrupt frames and machine library calls are properly counted.

**Call Tree** List all the functions sorted alphabetically followed by all the functions called inside. The display goes on recursively unless a function has already been listed. In such a case, the name is followed by the line number where the function is expanded. If a line becomes too long, the process is suspended and the line ends with a ... sequence indicating that this function is listed later. Functions called by pointer are listed between parenthesis, or between square brackets if called from an array of pointers.

**Symbols** List all the symbols defined in the application specifying for each its name, its value, the section where it is defined, and the modules where it is used. If the target processor supports bank switching, addresses are displayed as logical addresses by default. Physical addresses can be displayed by specifying the **-p** option on the linker command line.

## Return Value

*clnk* returns success if no error messages are printed to STDOUT; that is, if no undefined symbols remain and if all reads and writes succeed. Otherwise it returns failure.

## Linker Command Line Examples

This section shows you how to use the linker to perform some basic operations.

A linker command file consists of linker options, input and output file, and libraries. The options and files are read from a command file by the linker. For example, to create an PowerPC file from *file.o* you can type at the system prompt:

```
clnk -o myapp.ppc myapp.lkf
```

where *myapp.lkf* contains:

```
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -n.const# program start address
+seg .vtext -a .const          # constants follow program
+seg .sdata -b0x10000         # start data address
\cxppc\lib\crt.s.ppc         # startup object file
file1.o file2.o              # input object files
\cxppc\lib\libi.ppc          # integer lib.
\cxppc\lib\libm.ppc          # machine lib.
+def __memory=@.bss          # symbol used by startup
```

The following link command file is an example for an application that does **not** use floating point data types and does **not** require automatic initialization.

```
# demo.lkf: link command WITHOUT automatic init
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -n.const# program start address
+seg .vtext -a .const          # constants follow program
+seg .sdata -b0x10000         # start data address
\cxppc\lib\crt.s.ppc         # startup with NO-INIT
acia.o                        # main program
module1.o                     # module program
\cxppc\lib\libi.ppc          # integer lib.
\cxppc\lib\libm.ppc          # machine lib.
+seg .const -b0xffd6         # vectors eprom address
vector.o                      # reset & interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss          # symbol used by library
+def __stack=0x20000         # stack pointer initial value
```

The following link command file is an example for an application that uses single precision floating point data types and utilizes automatic data initialization.

```
# demo.lkf: link command WITH automatic init
+seg .const -b 0x40000000 -n.const# program start address
+seg .vtext -a .const          # constants follow program
+seg .sdata -b0x10000          # start data address
\cxppc\lib\crtsi.ppc        # startup with auto-init
acia.o                        # main program
module1.o                    # module program
\cxppc\lib\libf.ppc          # single prec.
\cxppc\lib\libi.ppc         # integer lib.
\cxppc\lib\libm.ppc         # machine lib.
+seg .const -b0xffd6         # vectors eprom address
vector.o                    # reset & interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss         # end of bss segment
+def __stack=0x20000        # stack pointer initial value
```



# Debugging Support

---

This chapter describes the debugging support available with the cross compiler targeting the PowerPC. There are two levels of debugging support available, so you can use either the COSMIC's **Zap** C source level cross debugger or your own debugger or in-circuit emulator to debug your application. This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Generating Debugging Information](#)
- [Generating Line Number Information](#)
- [Generating Data Object Information](#)
- [The cprd Utility](#)
- [The clst utility](#)

## Generating Debugging Information

The compiler generates debugging information in response to command line options you pass to the compiler as described below. The compiler can generate the following debugging information:

- 1 line number information that allows COSMIC's C source level debugger or another debugger or emulator to locate the address of the code that a particular C source line (or set of lines) generates. You may put line number information into the object module in either of the two formats, or you can generate both line number information and information about program data and function arguments, as described below.
- 2 information about the name, type, storage class and address (absolute or relative to a stack offset) of program static data objects, function arguments, and automatic data objects that functions declare. Information about what source files produced which relocatable or executable files. This information may be localized by address (where the output file resides in memory). It may be written to a file, sorted by address or alphabetical order, or it may be output to a printer in paginated or unpaginated format.

### Generating Line Number Information

The compiler puts line number information into a special debug symbol table. The debug symbol table is part of the relocatable object file produced by a compilation. It is also part of the output of the *clnk* linker. You can therefore obtain line number information about a single file, or about all the files making up an executable program. However, the compiler can produce line number information only for files that are **fewer** than 65,535 lines in length.

### Generating Data Object Information

The **+debug** option directs the compiler to generate information about data objects and function arguments and return types. The debugging information the compiler generates is the information used by the COSMIC's C source level cross debugger or another debugger or emulator. The information produced about data objects includes their name, scope, type and address. The address can be either absolute or relative to a stack offset.

As with line number information alone, you can generate debugging information about a single file or about all the files making up an executable program.

*cprd* may be used to extract the debugging information from files compiled with the **+debug** option, as described below.

PRELIMINARY

## The *cprd* Utility

**cprd** extracts information about functions and data objects from an object module or executable image that has been compiled with the **+debug** option. *cprd* extracts and prints information on the name, type, storage class and address (absolute or offset) of program static data objects, function arguments, and automatic data objects that functions declare. For automatic data, the address provided is an offset from the frame pointer. For function arguments, the address provided is an offset from the stack pointer.

### Command Line Options

*cprd* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cprd [options] file
      -fc* select function name
      -fl* select file name
      -o*  output file name
      -r   recurse structure fields
      -s   display object size
```

where *<file>* is an object file compiled from C source with the compiler command line option **+debug** set.

### Cprd Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-fc*</b>	print debugging information only about the function *. By default, <i>cprd</i> prints debugging information on all functions in <i>&lt;file&gt;</i> . Note that information about global data objects is always displayed when available.
<b>-fl*</b>	print debugging information only about the file *. By default, <i>cprd</i> prints debugging information on all C source files.
<b>-o*</b>	print debugging information to file *. Debugging information is written to your terminal screen by default.
<b>-r</b>	Display structure fields with their offset.
<b>-s</b>	Display object size in bytes.

By default, *cprd* prints debugging information about all functions and global data objects in *<file>*.

## Examples

The following example show sample output generated by running the *cprd* utility on an object file created by compiling the program *acia.c* with the compiler option **+debug** set.

```
cprd acia.ppc
```

Information extracted from *acia.ppc*

PRELIMINARY

## The *clst* utility

The **clst** utility takes relocatable or executable files as arguments, and creates listings showing the C source files that were compiled or linked to obtain those relocatable or executable files. It is a convenient utility for finding where the source statements are implemented.

To use *clst* efficiently, its argument files must have been compiled with the **+debug** option.

*clst* can be instructed to limit its display to files occupying memory in a particular range of addresses, facilitating debugging by excluding extraneous data. *clst* will display the entire content of any files located between the endpoints of its specified address range.

### Command Line Options

*clst* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
clst [options> file
-a list file alphabetically
-f*> process selected file
-i*> source file
-l# page length
-o* output file name
-p suppress pagination
-r* specify a line range #:#
```

### Clst Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a</b>	when set, cause <i>clst</i> to list files in alphabetical order. The default is that they are listed by increasing addresses.
<b>-f*&gt;</b>	specify <i>*</i> as the file to be processed. Default is to process all the files of the application. Up to 10 files can be specified.
<b>-i*&gt;</b>	read string <i>*</i> to locate the source file in a specific directory. Source files will first be searched for in the current directory, then in the specified directories in the order they were given to <i>clst</i> . You can specify up to 20 different paths. Each path is a directory name, <b>not</b> terminated by any directory separator character.

## Clst Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-l#</b>	when paginating output, make the listings <b>#</b> lines long. By default, listings are paginated at 66 lines per page.
<b>-o*</b>	redirect output from <i>clst</i> to file <b>*</b> . You can achieve a similar effect by redirecting output in the command line. <pre>clst -o acia.lst acia.ppc</pre> is equivalent to: <pre>clst acia.ppc &gt;acia.lst</pre>
<b>-p</b>	suppress pagination. No page breaks will be output.
<b>-r#:#</b>	where <b>#:#</b> is a range specification. It must be of the form <i>&lt;number&gt;:&lt;number&gt;</i> . When this flag is specified, only those source files occupying memory in the specified range will be listed. If part of a file occupies memory in the specified range, that file will be listed in its entirety. The following is a valid use of <b>-r</b> : <pre>-r 0xe000:0xe200</pre>



# Programming Support

This chapter describes each of the programming support utilities packaged with the C cross compiler targeting the [PowerPC](#). The following utilities are available:

Utility	Description
<a href="#">chex</a>	translate object module format
<a href="#">clabs</a>	generate absolute listings
<a href="#">clib</a>	build and maintains libraries
<a href="#">cobj</a>	examine objects modules
<a href="#">cvdwarf</a>	generate ELF/DWARF format

The assembler is described in [Chapter 5](#), “[Using The Assembler](#)”. The linker is described in [Chapter 6](#), “[Using The Linker](#)”. Support for debugging is described in [Chapter 7](#), “[Debugging Support](#)”.

The description of each utility tells you what tasks it can perform, the command line options it accepts, and how you use it to perform some commonly required operations. At the end of the chapter are a series of examples that show you how to combine the programming support utilities to perform more complex operations.

## The *chex* Utility

You use the ***chex*** utility to translate executable images produced by *clnk* to one of several hexadecimal interchange formats. These formats are: *Motorola S-record* format, and *Intel standard hex* format. You can also use *chex* to override text and data biases in an executable image or to output only a portion of the executable.

The executable image is read from the input file *<file>*.

### Command Line Options

*chex* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```

chex [options] file
-a## absolute file start address
-b## address bias
-e## entry point address
-f? output format
-h suppress header
+h* specify header string
-m# maximum data bytes per line
-n*> output only named segments
-o* output file name
-p use paged address format
-pa use paged address for data
-pl## page number for linear mapping
-pn use paged address in bank only
-pp use paged address with mapping
-s output increasing addresses
-w output word addresses
-x*> exclude named segments

```

### Chex Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a##</b>	the argument file is considered as a pure binary file and ## is the output address of the first byte.
<b>-b##</b>	subtract ## to any address before output.

## Chex Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description								
<b>-e##</b>	define <b>##</b> as the entry point address encoded in the dedicated record of the output format, if available.								
<b>-f?</b>	define output file format. Valid options are: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>i</b></td> <td>Intel Hex Format</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>m</b></td> <td>Motorola S19 format</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>2</b></td> <td>Motorola S2 format</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>3</b></td> <td>Motorola S3 format</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Default is to produce Motorola S-Records (<b>-fm</b>). Any other letter will select the default format</p>	<b>i</b>	Intel Hex Format	<b>m</b>	Motorola S19 format	<b>2</b>	Motorola S2 format	<b>3</b>	Motorola S3 format
<b>i</b>	Intel Hex Format								
<b>m</b>	Motorola S19 format								
<b>2</b>	Motorola S2 format								
<b>3</b>	Motorola S3 format								
<b>-h</b>	do not output the header sequence if such a sequence exists for the selected format.								
<b>+h*</b>	insert <b>*</b> in the header sequence if such a sequence exists for the selected format.								
<b>-m#</b>	output <b>#</b> maximum data bytes per line. Default is to output 32 bytes per line.								
<b>-n*&gt;</b>	output only segments whose name is equal to the string <b>*</b> . Up to twenty different names may be specified on the command line. If there are several segments with the same name, they will all be produced. This option is used in combination with the <b>-n</b> option of the linker.								
<b>-o*</b>	write output module to file <b>*</b> . The default is STDOUT.								
<b>-p</b>	output addresses of banked segments using a paged format <code>&lt;page_number&gt;&lt;logical_address&gt;</code> , instead of the default format <code>&lt;physical&gt;</code> .								
<b>-pa</b>	output addresses of banked data segments using a paged format <code>&lt;page_number&gt;&lt;logical_address&gt;</code> , instead of the default format <code>&lt;physical&gt;</code> .								

### Chex Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-pl###</b>	specify the page value of the segment localized between 0x8000 and 0xc000 when using a linear non-banked application. This option enforces a paged format for this segment.
<b>-pn</b>	behaves as <b>-p</b> but only when logical address is inside the banked area. This option has to be selected when producing an hex file for the Noral debugger.
<b>-pp</b>	behaves as <b>-p</b> but uses paged addresses for all banked segments, mapped or unmapped. This option has to be selected when producing an hex file for Promic tools.
<b>-s</b>	sort the output addresses in increasing order.
<b>-w</b>	output word addresses. Addresses must be aligned on even addresses. This option is useful for word processor type.
<b>-x*&gt;</b>	do not output segments whose name is equal to the string *. Up to twenty different names may be specified on the command line. If there are several segments with the same name, they will not all be output.

### Return Status

*chex* returns success if no error messages are printed; that is, if all records are valid and all reads and writes succeed. Otherwise it returns failure.

### Examples

The file *hello.c*, consisting of:

```
char *p = {"hello world"};
```

when compiled produces the following the following *Motorola S-record* format:

```
chex hello.o
```

```
S00A000068656C6C6F2E6F44
S1110000020068656C6C6F20776F726C640090
S9030000FC
```

and the following *Intel standard hex* format:

```
chex -fi hello.o
:0E000000020068656C6C6F20776F726C640094
:00000001FF
```

PRELIMINARY

## The clabs Utility

**clabs** processes assembler listing files with the associated executable file to produce listing with updated code and address values.

*clabs* decodes an executable file to retrieve the list of all the files which have been used to create the executable. For each of these files, *clabs* looks for a matching listing file produced by the compiler (“**.ls**” file). If such a file exists, *clabs* creates a new listing file (“**.la**” file) with absolute addresses and code, extracted from the executable file.

To be able to produce any results, the compiler **must** have been used with the ‘**-l**’ option.

### Command Line Options

*clabs* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below.

<b>clabs</b>	[options]	file
<b>-a</b>	process	also library files
<b>-cl*</b>	listings	files
<b>-l</b>	restrict	to local directory
<b>-p</b>	use	paged address format
<b>-pn</b>	use	paged address in bank only
<b>-pp</b>	use	paged address with mapping
<b>-r*</b>	relocatable	listing suffix
<b>-s*</b>	absolute	listing suffix
<b>-v</b>	echo	processed file names

### Clabs Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a</b>	process also files located in libraries. Default is to process only all the files of the application.
<b>-cl*</b>	specify a path for the listing files. By default, listings are created in the same directory than the source files.
<b>-l</b>	process files in the current directory only. Default is to process all the files of the application.

## Clabs Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-p</b>	output addresses of banked segments using a paged format <code>&lt;page_number&gt;&lt;logical_address&gt;</code> , instead of the default format <code>&lt;physical&gt;</code> .
<b>-pn</b>	behaves as <b>-p</b> but only when logical address is inside the banked area.
<b>-pp</b>	behaves as <b>-p</b> but uses paged addresses for all banked segments, mapped or unmapped.
<b>-r*</b>	specify the input suffix, including or not the dot '.' character. Default is <code>“.ls”</code>
<b>-s*</b>	specify the output suffix, including or not the dot '.' character. Default is <code>“.la”</code>
<b>-v</b>	be verbose. The name of each module of the application is output to STDOUT.

`<file>` specifies one file, which must be in executable format.

## Return Status

*clabs* returns success if no error messages are printed; that is, if all reads and writes succeed. An error message is output if no relocatable listing files are found. Otherwise it returns failure.

## Examples

The following command line:

```
clabs -v acia.ppc
```

will output:

```
crts.ls
acia.ls
vector.ls
```

and creates the following files:

```
crts.la
acia.la
vector.la
```

The following command line:

```
clabs -r.lst acia.ppc
```

will look for files with the suffix “.lst”:

The following command line:

```
clabs -s.lx acia.ppc
```

will generate:

```
crts.lx  
acia.lx  
vector.lx
```

## The *clib* Utility

***clib*** builds and maintains object module libraries. *clib* can also be used to collect arbitrary files in one place. *<library>* is the name of an existing library file or, in the case of replace or create operations, the name of the library to be constructed.

### Command Line Options

*clib* accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
clib [options] <library> <files>
-a      accept absolute symbols
-c      create a new library
-d      delete modules from library
-e      accept empty module
-i*     object list filename
-l      load all library at link
-r      replace modules in library
-s      list symbols in library
-t      list files in library
-v      be verbose
-x      extract modules from library
```

### Clib Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a</b>	include absolute symbols in the library symbol table.
<b>-c</b>	create a library containing <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> . Any existing <i>&lt;library&gt;</i> of the same name is removed before the new one is created.
<b>-d</b>	delete from the library the zero or more files in <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> .
<b>-e</b>	accept module with no symbol.
<b>-i*</b>	take object files from a list *. You can put several files per line or put one file per line. Each lines can include comments. They must be prefixed by the '#' character. If the command line contains <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> , then <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> will be also added to the library.

### Clib Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-l</b>	when a library is built with this flag set, all the modules of the library will be loaded at link time. By default, the linker only loads modules necessary for the application.
<b>-r</b>	in an existing library, replace the zero or more files in <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> . If no library <i>&lt;library&gt;</i> exists, create a library containing <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> . The files in <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> not present in the library are added to it.
<b>-s</b>	list the symbols defined in the library with the module name to which they belong.
<b>-t</b>	list the files in the library.
<b>-v</b>	be verbose
<b>-x</b>	extract the files in <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> that are present in the library into discrete files with the same names. If no <i>&lt;files&gt;</i> are specified, all files in the library are extracted.

At most one of the options **-[c r t x]** may be specified at the same time. If none of these is specified, the **-t** option is assumed.

### Return Status

*clib* returns success if no problems are encountered. Otherwise it returns failure. After most failures, an error message is printed to STDERR and the library file is not modified. Output from the **-t**, **-s** options, and verbose remarks, are written to STDOUT.

### Examples

To build a library and check its contents:

```
clib -c libc one.o two.o three.o
clib -t libc
```

will output:

```
one.o
two.o
three.o
```

To build a library from a list file:

```
clib -ci list libc six.o seven.o
```

where *list* contains:

```
# files for the libc library
one.o
two.o
three.o
four.o
five.o
```

PRELIMINARY

## The *cobj* Utility

You use ***cobj*** to inspect relocatable object files or executable. Such files may have been output by the assembler or by the linker. *cobj* can be used to check the size and configuration of relocatable object files or to output information from their symbol tables.

### Command Line Options

*cobj* accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
cobj [options] file
-d      output data flows
-h      output header
-n      output sections
-o*     output file name
-r      output relocation flows
-s      output symbol table
-v      display file addresses
-x      output debug symbols
```

*<file>* specifies a file, which must be in relocatable format or executable format.

### Cobj Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-d</b>	output in hexadecimal the data part of each section.
<b>-h</b>	display all the fields of the object file header.
<b>-n</b>	display the name, size and attribute of each section.
<b>-o*</b>	write output module to file *. The default is STDOUT.
<b>-r</b>	output in symbolic form the relocation part of each section.
<b>-s</b>	display the symbol table.
<b>-v</b>	display seek addresses inside the object file.
<b>-x</b>	display the debug symbol table.

If none of these options is specified, the default is **-hns**.

## Return Status

*cobj* returns success if no diagnostics are produced (*i.e.* if all reads are successful and all file formats are valid).

## Examples

For example, to get the symbol table:

```
cobj -s acia.o
```

symbols:

```
_main:      0000003e section .text defined public
_outh:      0000001b section .text defined public
_buffer:    00000000 section .bss defined public
_ptecr:     00000000 section .bsct defined public zpage
_getch:     00000000 section .text defined public
_ptlec:     00000002 section .bsct defined public zpage
_recept:    00000028 section .text defined public
```

The information for each symbol is: name, address, section to which it belongs and attribute.

## The cvdwarf Utility

**cvdwarf** is the utility used to convert a file produced by the linker into an ELF/DWARF format file.

### Command Line Options

*cvdwarf* accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
cvdwarf [options] file
    -bp##  bank start address
    -bs#   bank shift
    +dup   accept duplicate headers
    -loc   complex location description
    -o*    output file name
    +page# define pagination (HC12 only)
    -rb    reverse bitfield (L to R)
    -so    add stack offset
    -v     be verbose
```

*<file>* specifies a file, which must be in executable format.

### Cvdwarf Option usage

Option	Description
<b>-bp#</b>	start address of the banking page.
<b>-bs#</b>	set the window shift to #, which implies that the number of bytes in a window is <b>2**#</b> .  <b>THESE FLAGS ARE CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFUL FOR THE HC11K4.</b>
<b>+dup</b>	handle duplicate header files individually. By default, the converter assumes that all header files sharing the same name do have the same content or with conditional behaviours.
<b>-loc</b>	location lists are used in place of location expressions whenever the object whose location is being described can change location during its lifetime. <b>THIS POSSIBILITY IS NOT SUPPORTED BY ALL DEBUGGERS.</b>

## Cvdwarf Option usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-o*</b>	where * is a filename. * is used to specify the output file for <i>cvdwarf</i> . By default, if <b>-o</b> is not specified, <i>cvdwarf</i> send its output to the file whose name is obtained from the input file by replacing the filename extension with ".elf".

**+page#** output addresses in paged mode where # specifies the page type:

#		Valid usage for	Paging Window
1	for banked code	All HC12 and HCS12 paged derivatives when Code Paging used	FLASH 0x8000 to 0xbfff
2	for banked data	Only for HC12A4 when Data Paging used	RAM 0x7000 to 0x7fff
3	both (code and data)	Only for HC12A4 when Data and Code Paging used	FLASH 0x8000 to 0xbfff RAM 0x7000 to 0x7fff

By default, the banked mode is disable.

**THIS FLAG IS CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFULL FOR THE HC12/HCS12.**

**THIS FLAG IS NOT TO BE USED ON ANY S12X PAGING, BASED ON THE EXISTING GLOBAL ADDRESS MODE.**

**-rb** reverse bitfield from left to right.

**-so** add stack offset. This option has to be selected when using debuggers using the SP value directly.

**THIS FLAG IS CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFULL FOR THE HC08/HCS08.**

### Cvdwarf Option usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-v</b>	select verbose mode. <i>cvdwarf</i> will display information about its activity.

### Return Status

*cvdwarf* returns success if no problems are encountered. Otherwise it returns failure.

### Examples

Under MS/DOS, the command could be:

```
cvdwarf C:\test\acia.ppc
```

and will produce: C:\test\acia.elf

and the following command:

```
cvdwarf -o file C:\test\acia.ppc
```

will produce: file

Under UNIX, the command could be:

```
cvdwarf /test/acia.ppc
```

and will produce: test/acia.elf

# Compiler Error Messages

---

This appendix lists the error messages that the compiler may generate in response to errors in your program, or in response to problems in your host system environment, such as inadequate space for temporary intermediate files that the compiler creates.

The first pass of the compiler generally produces all user diagnostics. This pass deals with # control lines and lexical analysis, and then with everything else having to do with semantics. Only machine-dependent extensions are diagnosed in the code generator pass. If a pass produces diagnostics, later passes will not be run.

Any compiler message containing an exclamation mark ! or the word **PANIC** indicates that the compiler has detected an inconsistent internal state. Such occurrences are uncommon and should be reported to the maintainers.

- [Parser \(cpppc\) Error Messages](#)
- [Code Generator \(cgppc\) Error Messages](#)
- [Assembler \(cappc\) Error Messages](#)
- [Linker \(clnk\) Error Messages](#)

## Parser (cpppc) Error Messages

**<name> not a member** - field name not recognized for this struct/union

**<name> not an argument** - a declaration has been specified for an argument not specified as a function parameter

**<name> undefined** - a function or a variable is never defined

**FlexLM <message>**- an error is detected by the license manager

**\_asm string too long** - the string constant passed to *\_asm* is larger than 255 characters

**ambiguous space modifier** - a space modifier attempts to redefine an already specified modifier

**array size unknown** - the *sizeof* operator has been applied to an array of unknown size

**bad # argument in macro <name>** - the argument of a # operator in a *#define* macro is not a parameter

**bad # directive: <name>** - an unknown *#directive* has been specified

**bad # syntax - #** is not followed by an identifier

**bad ## argument in macro <name>** - an argument of a ## operator in a *#define* macro is missing

**bad #asm directive** - a *#asm* directive is not entered at a valid declaration or instruction boundary

**bad #define syntax** - a *#define* is not followed by an identifier

**bad #elif expression** - a *#elif* is not followed by a constant expression

**bad #else** - a *#else* occurs without a previous *#if*, *#ifdef*, *#ifndef* or *#elif*

**bad #endasm directive** - a *#endasm* directive is not closing a previous *#asm* directive

**bad #endif** - a *#endif* occurs without a previous *#if*, *#ifdef*, *#ifndef*, *#elif* or *#else*

**bad #if expression** - the expression part of a *#if* is not a constant expression

**bad #ifdef syntax** - extra characters are found after the symbol name

**bad #ifndef syntax** - extra characters are found after the symbol name

**bad #include syntax** - extra characters are found after the file name

**bad #pragma section directive** - syntax for the *#pragma section* directive is incorrect

**bad #pragma space directive** - syntax for the *#pragma space* directive is incorrect

**bad #undef syntax** - *#undef* is not followed by an identifier

**bad \_asm() argument type** - the first argument passed to *\_asm* is missing or is not a character string

**bad alias expression** - alias definition is not a valid expression

**bad alias value** - alias definition is not a constant expression

**bad bit number** - a bit number is not a constant between 0 and 7

**bad character <character>** - *<character>* is not part of a legal token

**bad defined syntax** - the *defined* operator must be followed by an identifier, or by an identifier enclosed in parenthesis

**bad function declaration** - function declaration has not been terminated by a right parenthesis

**bad integer constant** - an invalid integer constant has been specified

**bad invocation of macro <name>** - a *#define* macro defined without arguments has been invoked with arguments

**bad macro argument** - a parameter in a *#define* macro is not an identifier

**bad macro argument syntax** - parameters in a *#define* macro are not separated by commas

**bad proto argument type** - function prototype argument is declared without an explicit type

**bad real constant** - an invalid real constant has been specified

**bad space modifier** - a modifier beginning with a *@* character is not followed by an identifier

**bad structure for return** - the structure for return is not compatible with that of the function

**bad struct/union operand** - a structure or an union has been used as operand for an arithmetic operator

**bad symbol definition** - the syntax of a symbol defined by the **-d** option on the command line is not valid

**bad void argument** - the type *void* has not been used alone in a prototyped function declaration

**can't create <name>** - file *<name>* cannot be created for writing

**can't open <name>** - file *<name>* cannot be opened for reading

**can't redefine macro <name>** - macro *<name>* has been already defined

**can't undef macro <name>** - a *#undef* has been attempted on a predefined macro

**compare out of range** - a comparison is detected as being always true or always false (**+strict**)

**const assignment** - a *const* object is specified as left operand of an assignment operator

**constant assignment in a test** - an assignment operator has been used in the test expression of an *if*, *while*, *do*, *for* statements or a conditional expression (+strict)

**duplicate case** - two *case* labels have been defined with the same value in the same *switch* statement

**duplicate default** - a *default* label has been specified more than once in a *switch* statement

**embedded usage of tag name <name>** - a structure/union definition contains a reference to itself.

**enum size unknown** - the range of an enumeration is not available to choose the smallest integer type

**exponent overflow in real** - the exponent specified in a real constant is too large for the target encoding

**float value too large for integer cast** - a float constant is too large to be casted in an integer

**hexadecimal constant too large** - an hexadecimal constant is too large to be represented on an integer

**illegal storage class** - storage class is not legal in this context

**illegal type specification** - type specification is not recognizable

**illegal void operation** - an object of type *void* is used as operand of an arithmetic operator

**illegal void usage** - an object of type *void* is used as operand of an assignment operator

**implicit int type in argument declaration** - an argument has been declared without any type (+strict)

**implicit int type in global declaration** - a global variable has been declared without any type (+strict)

**implicit int type in local declaration** - a local variable has been declared without any type (**+strict**)

**implicit int type in struct/union declaration** - a structure or union field has been declared without any type (**+strict**)

**incompatible argument type** - the actual argument type does not match the corresponding type in the prototype

**incompatible compare type** - operands of comparison operators must be of scalar type

**incompatible operand types** - the operands of an arithmetic operator are not compatible

**incompatible pointer assignment** - assigned pointers must have the same type, or one of them must be a pointer to *void*

**incompatible pointer operand** - a scalar type is expected when operators `+=` and `-=` are used on pointers

**incompatible pointer operation** - pointers are not allowed for that kind of operation

**incompatible pointer types** - the pointers of the assignment operator must be of equal or coercible type

**incompatible return type** - the return expression is not compatible with the declared function return type

**incompatible struct/union operation** - a structure or an union has been used as operand of an arithmetic operator

**incompatible types in struct/union assignment** - structures must be compatible for assignment

**incomplete #elif expression** - a *#elif* is followed by an incomplete expression

**incomplete #if expression** - a *#if* is followed by an incomplete expression

**incomplete type** - structure type is not followed by a tag or definition

**incomplete type for debug information** - a structure or union is not completely defined in a file compiled with the debug option set

**integer constant too large** - a decimal constant is too large to be represented on an integer

**invalid case** - a *case* label has been specified outside of a *switch* statement

**invalid default** - a *default* label has been specified outside of a *switch* statement

**invalid ? test expression** - the first expression of a ternary operator (**? :**) is not a testable expression

**invalid address operand** - the “address of” operator has been applied to a *register* variable or an rvalue expression

**invalid address type** - the “address of” operator has been applied to a bitfield

**invalid alias** - an alias has been applied to an *extern* object

**invalid arithmetic operand** - the operands of an arithmetic operator are not of the same or coercible types

**invalid array dimension** - an array has been declared with a dimension which is not a constant expression

**invalid binary number** - the syntax for a binary constant is not valid

**invalid bit assignment** - the expression assigned to a bit variable must be scalar

**invalid bit initializer** - the expression initializing a bit variable must be scalar

**invalid bitfield size** - a bitfield has been declared with a size larger than its type size

**invalid bitfield type** - a type other than *int*, *unsigned int*, *char*, *unsigned char* has been used in a bitfield.

**invalid break** - a break may be used only in *while*, *for*, *do*, or *switch* statements

**invalid case operand** - a case label has to be followed by a constant expression

**invalid cast operand** - the operand of a *cast* operator is not an expression

**invalid cast type** - a cast has been applied to an object that cannot be coerced to a specific type

**invalid conditional operand** - the operands of a conditional operator are not compatible

**invalid constant expression** - a constant expression is missing or is not reduced to a constant value

**invalid continue** - a continue statement may be used only in *while*, *for*, or *do* statements

**invalid do test type** - the expression of a *do ... while()* instruction is not a testable expression

**invalid expression** - an incomplete or ill-formed expression has been detected

**invalid external initialization** - an external object has been initialized

**invalid floating point operation** - an invalid operator has been applied to floating point operands

**invalid for test type** - the second expression of a *for(;;)* instruction is not a testable expression

**invalid function member** - a function has been declared within a structure or an union

**invalid function type** - the function call operator `()` has been applied to an object which is not a function or a pointer to a function

**invalid if test type** - the expression of an `if ()` instruction is not a testable expression

**invalid indirection operand** - the operand of unary `*` is not a pointer

**invalid line number** - the first parameter of a `#line` directive is not an integer

**invalid local initialization** - the initialization of a local object is incomplete or ill-formed

**invalid lvalue** - the left operand of an assignment operator is not a variable or a pointer reference

**invalid narrow pointer cast** - a cast operator is attempting to reduce the size of a pointer

**invalid operand type** - the operand of a unary operator has an incompatible type

**invalid pointer cast operand** - a cast to a function pointer has been applied to a pointer that is not a function pointer

**invalid pointer initializer** - initializer must be a pointer expression or the constant expression `0`

**invalid pointer operand** - an expression which is not of integer type has been added to a pointer

**invalid pointer operation** - an illegal operator has been applied to a pointer operand

**invalid pointer types** - two incompatible pointers have been subtracted

**invalid shift count type** - the right expression of a shift operator is not an integer

**invalid sizeof operand type** - the *sizeof* operator has been applied to a function

**invalid storage class** - storage class is not legal in this context

**invalid struct/union operation** - a structure or an union has been used as operand of an arithmetic operator

**invalid switch test type** - the expression of a *switch ()* instruction must be of integer type

**invalid typedef usage** - a typedef identifier is used in an expression

**invalid void pointer** - a *void* pointer has been used as operand of an addition or a subtraction

**invalid while test type** - the expression of a *while ()* instruction is not a testable expression

**missing ## argument in macro <name>** - an argument of a *##* operator in a *#define* macro is missing

**missing '>' in #include** - a file name of a *#include* directive begins with '<' and does not end with '>'

**missing ) in defined expansion** - a '(' does not have a balancing ')' in a *defined* operator

**missing ; in argument declaration** - the declaration of a function argument does not end with ';'.

**missing ; in local declaration** - the declaration of a local variable does not end with ';'.

**missing ; in member declaration** - the declaration of a structure or union member does not end with ';'.

**missing ? test expression** - the test expression is missing in a ternary operator (? :)

**missing \_asm() argument** - the *\_asm* function needs at least one argument

**missing argument** - the number of arguments in the actual function call is less than that of its prototype declaration

**missing argument for macro <name>** - a macro invocation has fewer arguments than its corresponding declaration

**missing argument name** - the name of an argument is missing in a prototyped function declaration

**missing array subscript** - an array element has been referenced with an empty subscript

**missing do test expression** - a *do ... while ()* instruction has been specified with an empty *while* expression

**missing enumeration member** - a member of an enumeration is not an identifier

**missing explicit return** - a return statement is not ending a non-void function (**+strict**)

**missing exponent in real** - a floating point constant has an empty exponent after the 'e' or 'E' character

**missing expression** - an expression is needed, but none is present

**missing file name in #include** - a *#include* directive is used, but no file name is present

**missing goto label** - an identifier is needed after a *goto* instruction

**missing if test expression** - an *if ()* instruction has been used with an empty test expression

**missing initialization expression** - a local variable has been declared with an ending '=' character not followed by an expression

**missing initializer** - a simple object has been declared with an ending '=' character not followed by an expression

**missing local name** - a local variable has been declared without a name

**missing member declaration** - a structure or union has been declared without any member

**missing member name** - a structure or union member has been declared without a name

**missing name in declaration** - a variable has been declared without a name

**missing prototype** - a function has been used without a fully prototyped declaration (**+strict**)

**missing prototype for inline function** - an inline function has been declared without a fully prototyped syntax

**missing return expression** - a simple return statement is used in a non-void function (**+strict**)

**missing switch test expression** - an expression in a *switch* instruction is needed, but is not present

**missing while** - a *'while'* is expected and not found

**missing while test expression** - an expression in a *while* instruction is needed, but none is present

**missing :** - a *'.'* is expected and not found

**missing ;** - a *'.'* is expected and not found. The parser reports such an error on the previous element as most of the time the ; is missing at the end of the declaration. When this error occurs on top of a file or just after a file include, the line number reported may not match the exact location where the problem is detected.

**missing (** - a *'('* is expected and not found

**missing )** - a *)* is expected and not found

**missing ]** - a *']* is expected and not found

**missing {** - a *'{'* is expected and not found

**missing }** - a `}` is expected and not found

**missing } in enum definition** - an enumeration list does not end with a `}` character

**missing } in struct/union definition** - a structure or union member list does not end with a `}` character

**redeclared argument <name>** - a function argument has conflicting declarations

**redeclared enum member <name>** - an *enum* element is already declared in the same scope

**redeclared external <name>** - an *external* object or function has conflicting declarations

**redeclared local <name>** - a *local* is already declared in the same scope

**redeclared proto argument <name>** - an identifier is used more than once in a prototype function declaration

**redeclared typedef <name>** - a *typedef* is already declared in the same scope

**redefined alias <name>** - an *alias* has been applied to an already declared object

**redefined label <name>** - a *label* is defined more than once in a function

**redefined member <name>** - an identifier is used more than once in structure member declaration

**redefined tag <name>** - a *tag* is specified more than once in a given scope

**repeated type specification** - the same type modifier occurs more than once in a type specification

**scalar type required** - type must be integer, floating, or pointer

**size unknown** - an attempt to compute the size of an unknown object has occurred

**space attribute conflict** - a space modifier attempts to redefine an already specified modifier

**string too long** - a string is used to initialize an array of characters shorter than the string length

**struct/union size unknown** - an attempt to compute a structure or union size has occurred on an undefined structure or union

**syntax error** - an unexpected identifier has been read

**token overflow** - an expression is too complex to be parsed

**too many argument** - the number of actual arguments in a function declaration does not match that of the previous prototype declaration

**too many arguments for macro <name>** - a macro invocation has more arguments than its corresponding macro declaration

**too many initializers** - initialization is completed for a given object before initializer list is exhausted

**too many spaces modifiers** - too many different names for '@' modifiers are used

**truncating assignment** - the right operand of an assignment is larger than the left operand (**+strict**)

**unbalanced ‘** - a character constant does not end with a simple quote

**unbalanced “** - a string constant does not end with a double quote

**<name> undefined** - an undeclared identifier appears in an expression

**undefined label <name>** - a label is never defined

**undefined struct/union** - a structure or union is used and is never defined

**unexpected end of file** - last declaration is incomplete

**unexpected return expression** - a return with an expression has been used within a *void* function

**unknown enum definition** - an enumeration has been declared with no member

**unknown structure** - an attempt to initialize an undefined structure has been done

**unknown union** - an attempt to initialize an undefined union has been done

**value out of range** - a constant is assigned to a variable too small to represent its value (**+strict**)

**zero divide** - a divide by zero was detected

**zero modulus** - a modulus by zero was detected

## Code Generator (cgppc) Error Messages

**bad builtin** - the *@builtin* type modifier can be used only on functions

**bad @interrupt usage** - the *@interrupt* type modifier can only be used on functions.

**invalid indirect call** - a function has been called through a pointer with more than one *char* or *int* argument, or is returning a structure.

**redefined space** - the version of *cpppc* you used to compile your program is incompatible with *cgppc*.

**unknown space** - you have specified an invalid space modifier *@xxx*

**unknown space modifier** - you have specified an invalid space modifier *@xxx*

**PANIC ! bad input file** - cannot read input file

**PANIC ! bad output file** - cannot create output file

**PANIC ! can't write** - cannot write output file

All other **PANIC !** messages should never happen. If you get such a message, please report it with the corresponding source program to COSMIC.

## Assembler (cappc) Error Messages

The following error messages may be generated by the assembler. Note that the assembler's input is machine-generated code from the compiler. Hence, it is usually impossible to fix things 'on the fly'. The problem must be corrected in the source, and the offending program(s) recompiled.

**bad .source directive** - a *.source* directive is not followed by a string giving a file name and line numbers

**bad addressing mode** - an invalid addressing mode have been constructed

**bad argument number-** a parameter sequence  $\backslash n$  uses a value negative or greater than 9

**bad character constant** - a character constant is too long for an expression

**bad comment delimiter-** an unexpected field is not a comment

**bad constant** - a constant uses illegal characters

**bad else** - an *else* directive has been found without a previous *if* directive

**bad endif** - an *endif* directive has been found without a previous *if* or *else* directive

**bad file name** - the *include* directive operand is not a character string

**bad index register** - an invalid register has been used in an indexed addressing mode

**bad register** - an invalid register has been specified as operand of an instruction

**bad relocatable expression** - an external label has been used in either a constant expression, or with illegal operators

**bad string constant** - a character constant does not end with a single or double quote

**bad symbol name: <name>** - an expected symbol is not an identifier

**can't create <name>** - the file <name> cannot be opened for writing

**can't open <name>** - the file <name> cannot be opened for reading

**can't open source <name>** - the file <name> cannot be included

**cannot include from a macro** - the directive *include* cannot be specified within a macro definition

**cannot move back current pc** - an *org* directive has a negative offset

**illegal size** - the size of a *ds* directive is negative or zero

**missing label** - a label must be specified for this directive

**missing operand** - operand is expected for this instruction

**missing register** - a register is expected for this instruction

**missing string** - a character string is expected for this directive

**relocatable expression not allowed** - a constant is needed

**section name <name> too long** - a section name has more than 15 characters

**string constant too long** - a string constant is longer than 255 characters

**symbol <name> already defined** - attempt to redefine an existing symbol

**symbol <name> not defined** - a symbol has been used but not declared

**syntax error** - an unexpected identifier or operator has been found

**too many arguments** - a macro has been invoked with more than 9 arguments

**too many back tokens** - an expression is too complex to be evaluated

**unclosed if** - an *if* directive is not ended by an *else* or *endif* directive

**unknown instruction <name>** - an instruction not recognized by the processor has been specified

**value too large** - an operand is too large for the instruction type

**zero divide** - a divide by zero has been detected

PRELIMINARY

## Linker (clnk) Error Messages

**-a not allowed with -b or -o** - the *after* option cannot be specified if any start address is specified.

**+def symbol <symbol> multiply defined** - the symbol defined by a *+def* directive is already defined.

**bad address (<value>) for zero page symbol <name>** - a symbol declared in the zero page is allocated to an address larger than 8 bits.

**bad file format** - an input file has not an object file format.

**bad number in +def** - the number provided in a *+def* directive does not follow the standard C syntax.

**bad number in +spc <segment>** - the number provided in a *+spc* directive does not follow the standard C syntax.

**bad processor type** - an object file has not the same configuration information than the others.

**bad reloc code** - an object file contains unexpected relocation information.

**bad section name in +def** - the name specified after the '@' in a *+def* directive is not the name of a segment.

**can't create map file <file>** - map file cannot be created.

**can't create <file>** - output file cannot be created.

**can't locate .text segment for initialization** - initialized data segments have been found but no host segment has been specified.

**can't locate shared segment** - shared datas have been found but no host segment has been specified.

**can't open file <file>** - input file cannot be found.

**file already linked** - an input file has already been processed by the linker.

**function <function> is recursive** - a *nostack* function has been detected as recursive and cannot be allocated.

**function <function> is reentrant** - a function has been detected as reentrant. The function is both called in an interrupt function and in the main code.

**incomplete +def directive** - the **+def** directive syntax is not correct.

**incomplete +seg directive** - the **+seg** directive syntax is not correct.

**incomplete +spc directive** - the **+spc** directive syntax is not correct.

**init segment cannot be initialized** - the host segment for initialization cannot be itself initialized.

**invalid @ argument** - the syntax of an optional input file is not correct.

**invalid -i option** - the **-i** directive is followed by an unexpected character.

**missing command file** - a link command file must be specified on the command line.

**missing output file** - the **-o** option must be specified.

**missing '=' in +def** - the **+def** directive syntax is not correct.

**missing '=' in +spc <segment>** - the **+spc** directive syntax is not correct.

**named segment <segment> not defined** - a segment name does not match already existing segments.

**no default placement for segment <segment>** - a segment is missing **-a** or **-b** option.

**prefixed symbol <name> in conflict** - a symbol beginning by '*f*' (for a banked function) also exists without the '*f*' prefix.

**read error** - an input object file is corrupted

**segment <segment> and <segment> overlap** - a segment is overlapping another segment.

**segment <segment> size overflow** - the size of a segment is larger than the maximum value allowed by the **-m** option.

**shared segment not empty** - the host segment for shared data is not empty and cannot be used for allocation.

**symbol <symbol> multiply defined** - an object file attempts to redefine a symbol.

**symbol <symbol> not defined** - a symbol has been referenced but never defined.

**unknown directive** - a directive name has not been recognized as a linker directive.

# Modifying Compiler Operation

---

This chapter tells you how to modify compiler operation by making changes to the standard configuration file. It also explains how to create your own programmable options<sup>2</sup> which you can use to modify compiler operation from the [cxppc.cxf](#).

## The Configuration File

The configuration file is designed to define the default options and behaviour of the compiler passes. It will also allow the definition of programmable options thus simplifying the compiler configuration. A configuration file contains a list of options similar to the ones accepted for the compiler driver utility **cxppc**.

These options are described in **Chapter 4**, “[Using The Compiler](#)”. There are two differences: the option **-f** cannot be specified in a configuration file, and the extra **-m** option has been added to allow the definition of a programmable compiler option, as described in the next paragraph.

The contents of the configuration file **cxppc.cxf** as provided by the default installation appears below:

```
# CONFIGURATION FILE FOR PowerPC COMPILER
# Copyright (c) 2008 by COSMIC Software
#
-pu                # unsigned char
-pm0x3030          # model configuration
-i c:\cosmic\hppc # include path
#
-m debug:x        # debug: produce debug info
-m nobss:,bss    # nobss: do not use bss
-m rev:rb        # rev: reverse bit field order
-m strict:ck     # strict: enforce type checking
-m split:,sf     # functions in different sections
-m sprec:f       # use float only
-m modv:hmodv.h  # modv: functions in vle mode
-m warn:w1       # warn: enable warnings
```

The following command line:

```
cxppc hello.c
```

in combination with the above configuration file directs the **cxppc** compiler to execute the following commands:

```
cxppc -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cosmic\hppc hello.c
cgppc -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
co -o \2.cx1 \2.cx2
cappc -o hello.o -i\cosmic\hppc \2.cx1
```

## Changing the Default Options

To change the combination of options that the compiler will use, edit the configuration file and add your specific options using the **-p** (for the parser), **-g** (for the code generator), **-o** (for the optimizer) and **-a** (for the assembler) options. If you specify an invalid option or combination of options, compilation will not proceed beyond the step where the error occurred. You may define up to 60 such options.

### Creating Your Own Options

To create a programmable option, edit the configuration file and define the parametrable option with the **-m\*** option. The string *\** has the following format:

```
name:popt,gopt,oopt,aopt,exclude...
```

The first field defines the option *name* and must be ended by a colon character ':'. The four next fields describe the effect of this option on the four passes of the compiler, respectively the *parser*, the *generator*, the *optimizer* and the *assembler*. These fields are separated by a comma character ','. If no specific option is needed on a pass, the field has to be specified empty. The remaining fields, if specified, describe a exclusive relationship with other defined options. If two *exclusive* options are specified on the command line, the compiler will stop with an error message. You may define up to 20 programmable options. At least one field has to be specified. Empty fields need to be specified only if a useful field has to be entered after.

In the following example:

```
-m dl1:1,dl1,,,dl2# dl1: line option 1
-m dl2:1,dl2,,,dl1# dl1: line option 2
```

the two options *dl1* and *dl2* are defined. If the option **+dl1** is specified on the compiler command line, the specific option **-l** will be used for the *parser* and the specific option **-dl1** will be used for the code *generator*. No specific option will be used for the *optimizer* and for the *assembler*. The option *dl1* is also declared to be exclusive with the option *dl2*, meaning that *dl1* and *dl2* will not be allowed together on the compiler command line. The option *dl2* is defined in the same way.

## Example

The following command line

```
cx +nobss hello.c
```

in combination with the previous configuration file directs the **cxppc** compiler to execute the following commands:

```
cxppc -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cosmic\hppc hello.c  
cgppc -o \2.cx2 -bss \2.cx1  
coppc -o \2.cx1 \2.cx2  
cappc -o hello.o -i\cosmic\hppc \2.cx1
```

# PowerPC Machine Library

This appendix describes each of the functions in the Machine Library (**libm**). These functions provide the interface between the PowerPC microcomputer hardware and the functions required by the code generator. They are described in reference form, and listed alphabetically.

## Function Listing

c_dadd:	double addition
c_dcmp:	double compare
c_ddiv:	double divide
c_dmul:	double multiply
c_dneg:	negate a double
c_dsub:	double subtract
c_dtof:	convert double to float
c_dtol:	convert double to long
c_fadd:	float addition
c_fcmp:	float compare
c_fdiv:	float divide
c_fmul:	float multiply
c_fneg:	negate a float
c_fsub:	float subtract

c\_ftod: convert float to double  
c\_jrtab: perform a C switch statement  
c\_ltod: convert long to double  
c\_ltof: convert long to float  
c\_ultod: convert unsigned long to double  
c\_ultof: convert unsigned long to float

PRELIMINARY

# Compiler Passes

The information contained in this appendix is of interest to those users who want to modify the default operation of the cross compiler by changing the configuration file that the **cxppc** compiler uses to control the compilation process.

This appendix describes each of the passes of the compiler:

<b>cpppc</b>	the parser
<b>cgppc</b>	the code generator
<b>coppc</b>	the assembly language optimizer

## The *cpppc* Parser

***cpppc*** is the parser used by the C compiler to expand *#defines*, *#includes*, and other directives signalled by a *#*, parse the resulting text, and outputs a sequential file of flow graphs and parse trees suitable for input to the code generator ***cgppc***.

### Command Line Options

*cpppc* accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

PRELIMINARY

```
cpppc [options] file
-a#      register allocation mode
-ad      expand defines in assembly
-c99     c99 type behaviour
-cc      do not cast const expressions
-ck      extra type checkings
-cp      no constant propagation
-csb     check signed bitfields
-d*>     define symbol=value
-e       run preprocessor only
+e*     error file name
-f       single precision floats
-fr      enable float registers
-h*>     include header
-i*>     include path
-l       output line information
-md      make dependencies
-m#      model configuration
-nc      no const replacement
-ne      no enum optimization
-np      allow pointer narrowing
-ns      do not share locals
-o*      output file name
-p       need prototypes
-rb      reverse bitfield order
-sa      strict ANSI conformance
-u       plain char is unsigned
-w#      enable warnings
-xd      debug info for data
-xp      no path in debug info
-xu      no debug info if unused
-xx      extended debug info
-x       output debug info
```

## Parser Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a#</b>	<p>define the register variables allocation features. The three first bits of # enable the following behaviours:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>bit 0:</b> keep register variables as declared</li><li><b>bit 1:</b> do not map autos to registers</li><li><b>bit 2:</b> do not map static addresses to registers</li></ul> <p>The default value is 0, meaning that the compiler tries to allocate as many as locals in registers, regardless of any <i>register</i> declarations, and tries to fill remaining registers with the address of the most used global variables.</p>
<b>-ad</b>	<p>enable #define expansion inside inline assembly code between #asm and #endasm directives. By default, #define symbols are expanded only in the C code.</p>
<b>-c99</b>	<p>authorize the repetition of the const and volatile modifiers in the declaration either directly or indirectly in the typedef.</p>
<b>-cc</b>	<p>do not apply standard type casting to the result of a constant expression. This option allows compatibility with parsers previous to version V4.5p. These previous parsers were behaving as if all constants were considered of type long instead of the default type int. Such expressions were allowing intermediate results to become larger than an int without any truncation.</p>
<b>-ck</b>	<p>enable extra type checking. For more information, see "<a href="#">Extra verifications</a>" below.</p>
<b>-cp</b>	<p>disable the constant propagation optimization. By default, when a variable is assigned with a constant, any subsequent access to that variable is replaced by the constant itself until the variable is modified or a flow break is encountered (function call, loop, label ...).</p>
<b>-csb</b>	<p>produce an error message if a bitfield is declared explicitly with the <b>signed</b> keyword. By default, the compiler silently ignores the signed feature and handles all bitfields as unsigned values.</p>

## Parser Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-d*^</b>	specify * as the name of a user-defined preprocessor symbol ( <b>#define</b> ). The form of the definition is <b>-dsymbol[=value]</b> ; the symbol is set to <b>1</b> if value is omitted. You can specify up to 60 such definitions.
<b>-e</b>	run preprocessor only. <i>cpppc</i> only outputs lines of text.
<b>+e*</b>	log errors in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
<b>-f</b>	treat all floating point numbers as float and not double, even if they are declared as double. All calculations will be made on 32 bits instead of 64 bits. Space reservations will be made on a 32 bit basis, as well as argument passing.
<b>-fr</b>	enable float registers
<b>-h*&gt;</b>	include files before to start the compiler process. You can specify up to 60 files.
<b>-i*&gt;</b>	specify include path. You can specify up to 128 different paths. Each path is a directory name, <b>not</b> terminated by any directory separator character, or a file containing a list of directory names.
<b>-l</b>	output line number information for listing or debug.
<b>-md</b>	create only a list of 'make' compatible dependencies consisting for each source file in the object name followed by a list of header files needed to compile that file.

## Parser Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description										
<b>-m#</b>	<p>the value # is used to configure the parser behaviour. It is a two bytes value, the upper byte specifies the default space for variables, and the lower byte specifies the default space for functions. A space byte is the or'ed value between a size specifier and several optional other specifiers. The allowed size specifiers are:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>0x10</b></td> <td>@tiny</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>0x20</b></td> <td>@near</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>0x30</b></td> <td>@far</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Allowed optional specifiers are:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>0x02</b></td> <td>@pack</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>0x04</b></td> <td>@nostack</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note that all the combinations are not significant for all the target processors.</p>	<b>0x10</b>	@tiny	<b>0x20</b>	@near	<b>0x30</b>	@far	<b>0x02</b>	@pack	<b>0x04</b>	@nostack
<b>0x10</b>	@tiny										
<b>0x20</b>	@near										
<b>0x30</b>	@far										
<b>0x02</b>	@pack										
<b>0x04</b>	@nostack										
<b>-nc</b>	do not replace an access to an initialized const object by its value. By default, the usage of a const object whose value is known is replaced by its constant value.										
<b>-ne</b>	do not optimize size of <i>enum</i> variables. By default, the compiler selects the smallest integer type by checking the range of the declared <i>enum</i> members. This mechanism does not allow incomplete <i>enum</i> declaration. When the <b>-ne</b> option is selected, all <i>enum</i> variables are allocated as <i>int</i> variables, thus allowing incomplete declarations, as the knowledge of all the members is no more necessary to choose the proper integer type.										
<b>-np</b>	allow pointer narrowing. By default, the compiler refuses to cast the pointer into any smaller object. This option should be used carefully as such conversions are truncating addresses.										

## Parser Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-ns</b>	do not share independent local variables. By default, the compiler tries to overlay variables in the same memory location or register if they are not used concurrently.
<b>-o*</b>	write the output to the file *. Default is STDOUT for output if <b>-e</b> is specified. Otherwise, an output file name is required.
<b>-p</b>	enforce prototype declaration for functions. An error message is issued if a function is used and no prototype declaration is found for it. By default, the compiler accepts both syntaxes without any error.
<b>-rb</b>	reverse the bitfield fill order. By default, bitfields are filled from <b>less</b> significant bit (LSB) to <b>most</b> significant bit (MSB). If this option is specified, filling works from most significant bit to less significant bit.
<b>-sa</b>	enforce a strict ANSI checking by rejecting any syntax or semantic extension. This option also disables the enum size optimization ( <b>-ne</b> ).
<b>-u</b>	take a plain char to be of type <b>unsigned char</b> , not signed char. This also affects in the same way strings constants.
<b>-w#</b>	enable warnings if # is greater or equal to 0. By default, warnings are disabled.
<b>-x</b>	generate debugging information for use by the cross debugger or some other debugger or in-circuit emulator. The default is to generate no debugging information.
<b>-xd</b>	add debug information in the object file only for data objects, hiding any function.
<b>-xp</b>	do not prefix filenames in the debug information with any absolute path name. Debuggers will have to be informed about the actual files location.
<b>-xu</b>	do not produce debug information for localized variables if they are not used. By default, the compiler produces a complete debug information regardless the variable is accessed or not.

### Parser Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>-xx</b>	add debug information in the object file for any label defining code or data.

### Extra verifications

This paragraph describes the checkings done by the **-ck** parser option (**+strict** compiler option) according to the error message produced.

**implicit int type in struct/union declaration**

**implicit int type in global declaration**

**implicit int type in local declaration**

**implicit int type in argument declaration** - an object is declared without an explicit type and is defaulted to **int** according to the ANSI standard.

**float value too large for integer cast** - a float constant is cast to an integer or a long but is larger than the maximum value of the cast type.

**compare out of range** - a comparison is made with a constant larger (or smaller) than the possible values for the type of the compared expression.

**shift count out of range** - a shift count is larger than the bit size of the shifted expression.

**constant assignment in a test** - a constant is assigned to a variable in a test expression.

**unreachable code** - a code sequence cannot be reached due to previous optimizations.

**missing return expression** - a return statement without expression is specified in a function with a non void return type.

**missing explicit return** - a function is not ending with a return statement.

**value out of range** - a constant is assigned to a variable and is larger (or smaller) than the possible set of values for that type.

**truncating assignment** - an expression is assigned to a variable and has a type larger than the variable one.

The **-ck** option also enables internally the prototype checking.

## Return Status

*cpppc* returns success if it produces no error diagnostics.

## Example

*cpppc* is usually invoked before *cg* the code generator, as in:

```
cpppc -o \2.cx1 -u -i \cosmic\hppc file.c
cgppc -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
```

## The *cgppc* Code Generator

**cgppc** is the code generating pass of the C compiler. It accepts a sequential file of flow graphs and parse trees from *cpppc* and outputs a sequential file of assembly language statements.

As much as possible, the compiler generates freestanding code, but, for those operations which cannot be done compactly, it generates inline calls to a set of machine-dependent runtime library routines.

### Command Line Options

*cgppc* accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

```

cgppc [options] file
-a          optimize _asm code
-bss       do not use bss
-dl#       output line information
+e*        error file name
-f         full source display
-l         output listing
-na        do not xdef alias name
-no        do not use optimizer
-nt        do not use indirect table
-o*        output file name
-sf        split function sections
-v         verbose

```

### Code generator Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-a</b>	optimize <i>_asm</i> code. By default, the assembly code inserted by a <i>_asm</i> call is left unchanged by the optimizer.
<b>-bss</b>	inhibit generating code into the <i>bss</i> section.
<b>-dl#</b>	produce line number information. # must be either '1' or '2'. Line number information can be produced in two ways: 1) function name and line number is obtained by specifying <b>-dl1</b> ; 2) file name and line number is obtained by specifying <b>-dl2</b> . All information is coded in symbols that are in the debug symbol table.

## Code generator Option Usage (cont.)

Option	Description
<b>+e*</b>	log errors in the text file <i>*</i> instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
<b>-f</b>	merge all C source lines of functions producing code into the C and Assembly listing. By default, only C lines actually producing assembly code are shown in the listing.
<b>-l</b>	merge C source listing with assembly language code; listing output defaults to <i>&lt;file&gt;.ls</i> .
<b>-na</b>	do not produce an <i>xdef</i> directive for the <i>equate</i> names created for each C object declared with an absolute address.
<b>-no</b>	do not produce special directives for the post-optimizer.
<b>-nt</b>	
<b>-o*</b>	write the output to the file <i>*</i> and write error messages to STDOUT. The default is STDOUT for output and STDERR for error messages.
<b>-sf</b>	produce each function in a different section, thus allowing the linker to suppress a function if it is not used by the application. By default, all the functions are packed in a single section.
<b>-v</b>	When this option is set, each function name is sent to STDERR when <i>cgppc</i> starts processing it.

## Return Status

*cgppc* returns success if it produces no diagnostics.

## Example

*cgppc* usually follows *cpppc* as follows:

```
cpppc -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cosmic\hppc file.c
cgppc -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
```

## The *coppc* Assembly Language Optimizer

***coppc*** is the code optimizing pass of the C compiler. It reads source files of PowerPC assembly language source code, as generated by the *cgppc* code generator, and writes assembly language statements. *coppc* is a peephole optimizer; it works by checking lines function by function for specific patterns. If the patterns are present, *coppc* replaces the lines where the patterns occur with an optimized line or set of lines. It repeatedly checks replaced patterns for further optimizations until no more are possible. It deals with redundant load/store operations, constants, stack handling, and other operations.

### Command Line Options

*coppc* accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
coppc [options] <file>
-c      keep original lines as comments
-d*    disable specific optimizations
-o*    output file name
-v      print efficiency statistics
```

### Optimizer Option Usage

Option	Description
<b>-c</b>	leave removed instructions as comments in the output file.
<b>-d*</b>	specify a list of codes allowing specific optimizations functions to be selectively disabled.
<b>-o*</b>	write the output to the file * and write error messages to STDOUT. The default is STDOUT for output and STDERR for error messages.
<b>-v</b>	write a log of modifications to STDERR. This displays the number of removed instructions followed by the number of modified instructions.

If *<file>* is present, it is used as the input file instead of the default STDIN.

## Disabling Optimization

When using the optimizer with the **-c** option, lines which are changed or removed are kept in the assembly source as comment, followed by a code composed with a letter and a digit, identifying the internal function which performs the optimization. If an optimization appears to do something wrong, it is possible to disable selectively that function by specifying its code with the **-d** option. Several functions can be disabled by specifying a list of codes without any whitespaces. The code letter can be enter both lower or uppercase.

## Return Status

*coppc* returns success if it produces no diagnostics.

## Example

*coppc* is usually invoked after *cgppc* as follows:

```
cpppc -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cosmic\hppc file.c
cgppc -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
coppc -o file.s \2.cx2
```



# Index

## Symbols

#asm  
    directive 43, 352  
#endasm  
    directive 43, 352  
#pragma asm directive 43  
#pragma endasm directive 43  
+grp directive 272  
+seg option 268  
.bss  
    section 32, 39  
    section,generated 24  
.const  
    section 39  
    segment 278  
.data  
    section 39  
    section,generated 24  
.sbss section 19, 39  
.sdata section 19, 39  
.text section 39  
.vtext section 39  
@dir  
    space modifier 48  
    variables 48  
\_\_ckdesc\_\_ 1 284  
\_\_idesc\_\_ 282, 283  
\_\_memory symbol 21, 51  
\_\_sbss symbol 20  
\_\_sdata symbol 20  
\_\_stack symbol 21  
\_\_asm

argument string size 44  
assembly sequence 44  
code optimization 358  
in expression 45  
return type 45  
\_asm()  
    function 71  
    inserting assembler function 67  
\_checksum  
    function 83  
\_checksum16 function 85  
\_checksum16x function 86  
\_checksumx function 84  
\_Fract  
    argument 131  
\_sbreak function 51

## Numerics

32 bits, float 353  
8-bit precision,operation 10

## A

abort function 72  
abs function 73  
absolute  
    address 298  
    address in listing 310  
    hex file generator 9  
    listing file 310  
    listing utility 10  
    map section 180  
    path name 355

- 
- referencing address 41
  - section 240, 249
  - section relocation 277
  - symbol 271
  - symbol in library 313
  - symbol table 267
  - symbol tables 291
  - symbol,flagged 291
  - acos function 74
  - address
    - default format 307, 311
    - logical end 270
    - logical start segment 277
    - logical start set 270
    - paged format 307, 311
    - physical 270
    - physical end 268
    - physical start 268
    - physical start segment 277
    - set logical 270
  - align directive 200
  - application
    - embedded 262
    - non-banked 308
    - system bootstrap 262
  - asin function 75
  - assembler
    - branch shortening 198
    - C style directives 199
    - code inline 44
    - conditional directive 196
    - create listing file 181
    - endm directive 193
    - environment symbol 198
    - expression 192
    - filling byte 181
    - include directive 197
    - listing process 310
    - listing stream 183
    - macro
      - instruction 193
      - macro directive 193
      - macro parameter 194
      - object file 183
      - operator set 192
      - sections 197
      - special parameter \# 194
      - special parameter \\* 195, 232
      - special parameter \0 195, 233
      - switch directive 197
  - assembleur
    - debug information
      - add line 182
      - label 182
  - assembly language
    - code optimizer 360
  - atan function 76
  - atan2 function 77
  - atof function 78
  - atoi function 79
  - atol function 80
- ## B
- bank
    - automatic segment creation 270
    - default mode 319
    - size setting 268
    - switched system 277
  - base directive 201
  - bias
    - segment parameter 277
    - setting 278
  - bitfield
    - compiler reverse option 64
    - default order 355
    - filling 355
    - filling order 64
    - reverse order 355
    - sign check 352
  - boundary
    - round up 270
  - buffer
    - convert to double 78, 163
    - convert to integer 79

- 
- convert to long 80, 164
  - convert to unsigned long 165
  - copy from one to another 122, 123
- C**
- C interface
    - to assembly language 48
    - underscore character prefix 48
  - C library
    - builtin functions 69
    - floating point functions 68
    - integer functions 67
    - macro functions 68
    - package 67
  - C source
    - lines merging 359
  - calloc function 81
  - casting 352
  - ceil function 82
  - char
    - signed 355
    - unsigned 355
  - checksum
    - ck option 284
    - crc 284
    - functions 284
    - ik option 285
  - clabs utility 310
  - clib utility 313
  - clist directive 202, 217, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227
  - clst utility 302
  - cobj utility 316
  - code generator
    - compiler pass 358
    - error log file 359
  - code optimizer
    - compiler pass 360
  - code/data, no output 268
  - compiler
    - ANSI checking 355
    - assembler 9
    - assembler options specification 62
    - C preprocessor and language parser 8
    - code generator 9
    - code generator option specification 62
    - code optimization 10
    - code optimizer 9
    - combination of options 345
    - command line options 60
    - configuration file 344
    - configuration file specification 62
    - configuration file, predefined option 63
    - create assembler file only 63
    - debug information, produce 64
    - default behavior 60
    - default configuration file 62
    - default operations 349
    - default options 60, 344
    - driver 4
    - error files path specification 62
    - error message 60
    - exclusive options 345
    - flags 6
    - generate error 321
    - generate error file 66
    - generate listing 66
    - include path definition 63
    - invoke 60
    - listing file 63
    - listing file path specification 62
    - log error file 62
    - name 60
    - object file path specification 62
    - optimizer option specification 63
    - options 60
    - options request 60
    - parser option specification 63
    - predefined option selection 63
    - preprocessed file only 63
    - produce assembly file 17
    - programmable option 344, 345

---

- specific options 4
- specify options 61
- temporary files path 63
- type checking 64, 352
- user-defined preprocessor symbol 62
- verbose mode 18, 63
- const
  - data 36
  - qualifier 36
- constant
  - numeric 191
  - prefix character 191
  - string 191
  - string character 191
  - suffix character 191
- convert
  - ELF/DWARF format 318
  - hex format 306
- cos function 87
- cosh function 88
- cprd utility 300
- cross-reference
  - information 181
  - table in listing 184
- cvdwarf utility 318

## D

- data
  - automatic initialization 34
  - char representation 56
  - const type 36
  - const volatile 37
  - float and double representation 56
  - int representation 56
  - long representation 56
  - pointer representation 56
  - short representation 56
  - volatile type 36
- data object
  - automatic 300
  - scope 298
  - type 298

- dc directive 203
- dcb directive 204
- debug information
  - adding 355, 356
- debug symbol
  - build table 286
  - table 298
- debugging
  - data 298
  - support tools 297
- debugging information
  - data object 298
  - extract 300
  - generate 298, 355
  - line number 298
  - print file 300
  - print function 300
- default
  - output file 182
- default placement
  - .bsct segment 278
  - .bss segment 278
  - .data segment 278
  - .text segment 278
- definition 286
- DEFs 286
- descriptor
  - host to 269
- div function 89
- divide 89
- dlist directive 205
- double
  - library 279
- ds directive 206

## E

- else directive 207, 208, 211, 217, 219, 226
- end directive 209
- end5 directive 213
- endc directive 219, 226
- endif directive 207, 210, 211, 217

---

endm directive 212, 232, 235, 247

endr 243, 244

enum

size optimization 354

equ directive 214, 251

error

assembler log file 181

file name 66

log file 267

message 10

message list 321

multiply defined symbol 189, 290

undefined symbol 286

undefined symbol in listing 182

even directive 215

executable image 306

exit function 90

exp function 91

expression

evaluation 193

high 193

low 193

page 193

relocatable 192

## F

fabs function 92

fail directive 216

file length restriction 298

file names 65

filling byte 200, 206, 215, 240

float

+sprec option 280

calculation 353

single precision library 280

floating point library 67

Floating Point Library Functions 68

floor function 93

fmod function 94

format

argument output to buffer 146

argument,output to buffer 176, 177

arguments output 128

ELF/DWARF 318

IEEE Floating Point Standard 56

read input 138

read input from string 149

string conversion specifications 128

format description 138

free function 95

frexp function 96

function

arguments 300

enforce prototype declaration 355

in separate section 64

prototype declaration 355

recursive 292

returning int 70

suppress 359

suppress unused 64

function arguments 300

## G

generate

.bss section 48

.const section 48

.data section 48

.sbss section 48

.sdata section 48

.text section 48

.vtext section 48

hex record 270

listing file 182

object file 182

getchar function 97

gets function 98

group

option 264

## H

header files 69

heap

allocate space 81

control 51

---

- free space 95
- location 53
- pointer 51
- space 81
- start 51
- top 51

-help option 6

## I

- if directive 207, 211, 217
- if directive 210
- ifc directive 218
- ifdef directive 219
- ifeq directive 220
- ifge directive 221
- ifgt directive 222
- ifle directive 223
- iflt directive 224
- ifnc directive 225
- ifndef directive 226
- ifne directive 227
- include
  - assembler directive 228
  - directory names list 353
  - file 273
  - file before 353
  - module 279
  - object file 272
  - path specification 353
  - specify path 353
- initialization
  - automatic 282
  - define option 269
  - descriptor 282
  - descriptor address 283
  - descriptor format 282
  - first segment 282
  - initialized segments 282
  - marker 269
  - startup routine 283
- inline
  - #pragma directive 43

- assembly code 44
- assembly instruction 43
- block inside a function 43
- block outside a function 43
- with `_asm` function 44, 45
- with pragma sequences 43

integer 89

- library 280

interrupt

- function in map 292
- handler 47
- reset 31
- vectors 47

isalnum function 99

isalpha function 100

isascii 101

isdigit function 102

isgraph function 103

islower function 104

isprint function 105

ispunct function 106

isqrt function 107

isspace function 108

isupper function 109

isxdigit function 110

## L

- label 189
- labs function 111
- ldexp function 112
- ldiv function 113
- library
  - build and maintain 10
  - building and maintaining 313
  - create 313
  - delete file 313
  - double precision 279
  - extract file 314
  - file 279
  - floating point 67
  - integer 67, 280
  - list file 314

- 
- load all files 314
  - load modules 265
  - machine 67
  - path specification 267
  - replace file 314
  - scanned 265
  - single precision 280
  - Standard ANSI 279
  - version 279
- line number
- information 358
- link
- command file 20, 266
- linker
- # character prefix,comment 265
  - build freestanding program 262
  - clnk 9
  - command file 264
  - command file example 294
  - command item 264
  - comment 265
  - global command line options 267
  - output file 263
  - physical memory 263
- list directive 229
- listing
- cross reference 18
  - file location 27
  - file path specification 310
  - interspersed C and assembly file 17
- lit directive 230
- local directive 189, 231
- locate source file 302
- log function 114
- log10 function 115
- longjmp function 116
- lowercase mnemonics 45
- M**
- macro
- argument 194
  - assembler directive 232
  - internal label 189
  - named argument 194
  - named syntax 195
  - numbered argument 194
  - numbered syntax 194
- main
- function 292
- main() routine 32
- malloc function 118
- map
- file description 292
  - modules section 292
  - produce information 267
  - segment section 292
  - stack usage section 292
  - symbols section 292
- max function 119
- maximum 119
- memchr function 120
- memcmp function 121
- memcpy function 122
- memmove function 123
- memory
- location 41
  - mapped I/O 41
- memset function 124
- messg directive 234
- mexit directive 233, 235
- min function 125
- mlist directive 236
- modf function 126
- Motorola
- S-Records format 307
  - standard behaviour 198
  - standard S-record,generating 21
  - syntax 184
- N**
- named syntax, example 233
- new
- segment control 264
  - start region 274

---

nolist directive 237  
nopage directive 238  
numbered syntax, example 233

## O

object  
    file location 27  
    image 261  
    module 262  
    module inspector 10  
    relocatable 316  
    relocatable file size 316  
    size 316  
object code output 183  
object file  
    debug symbol, in 183  
offset  
    segment parameter 277  
    setting 278  
offset directive 239  
old syntax support 198  
optimization  
    disable selectively 361  
    keep line 361  
    specific code 360  
option  
    global 266  
org directive 240  
output  
    default format 307  
    file name 266  
    listing line number 353  
override  
    data bias 306  
    text bias 306

## P

page  
    assembler directive 241  
    value 308  
    value, assembler 193  
paginating output 303

parser  
    behaviour 354  
    compiler pass 350  
    error log file 353  
plen directive 242  
pointer  
    narrow 354  
pow function 127  
PowerPC  
    addressing mode 188  
    instruction set 184  
prefix  
    filename 355  
preprocessor  
    #define 350  
    #include 350  
    run only 353  
printf function 128  
private name region  
    use 287  
processor  
    cycle 182  
    select type 181  
putchar function 133  
puts function 134

## R

rand function 135  
range specification 303  
realloc function 136  
redirect output 303  
REFs 286  
region  
    name 264  
    private 274  
    public 274  
    use of private name 287  
register variables allocation 352  
relative address 298  
repeat directive 243  
repeatl directive 244  
restore directive 246

---

rexit directive 244, 247  
ROM 41  
rotate vector through angle 87  
runtime startup  
    modifying 31

**S**

save directive 248  
sbreak function 137  
scanf function 138  
section  
    .bss 19  
    .const 19  
    .data 19  
    .text 19  
    .vtext 19  
    assembler directive 249  
    curly braces, initialized data 39  
    definition 261  
    name 39, 197  
    parenthesis, code 39  
    pragma definition 39  
    pragma directive 39  
    predefinition 197  
    single 359  
    square brackets, uninitialized data 39  
    switch to default 40  
    unused 269  
    user defined 39  
sections  
    default 39  
    predefined 39  
    relocation 277  
segment  
    bsct start address 271  
    bss start address 271  
    build new 279  
    control options 266, 268  
    data start address 271  
    definition 261  
    fill 268  
    follow current 268  
    maximum size 269  
    name 270  
    overlap checking 270, 278  
    overlapping 279  
    overlapping control 270  
    root 269  
    round up address 270  
    section overlap 271  
    shared data 269  
    space name 278  
    start, new 268  
    text start address 271  
    zero size 265  
separated address space 278  
set directive 251  
set new level 119  
setjmp 116  
setjmp function 142  
share  
    local variable 355  
sin function 144  
single precision option 280  
sinh function 145  
source files listing 302  
source listings 302  
space  
    allocate on heap 118  
    for function 354  
    for variable 354  
space name  
    definition 270  
spc directive 252  
sprintf function 146  
sqrt function 147  
square root  
    unsigned int compute 107  
    unsigned long int compute 117  
srand function 148  
sscanf function 149  
stack  
    amount of memory 292  
    free space 95

---

- need 292
- pointer,set 32
- standard ANSI libraries 279
- static data 300
- strcat function 150
- strchr function 151
- strcmp function 152
- strcpy function 153
- strespn function 154
- strlen function 155
- strncat function 156
- strncmp function 157
- strncpy function 158
- strpbrk function 159
- strrchr function 160
- strspn function 161
- strstr function 162
- strtod function 163
- strtol function 164
- strtoul function 165
- suffix
  - assembly file 60
  - C file 60
  - input 311
  - output 311
- suppress pagination 303
- switch directive 253
- symbol
  - \_\_memory 32
  - \_\_sbss 32
  - \_\_stack 32
  - alias 287
  - define 264
  - define alias 275
  - define new 275
  - definition 275
  - export 291
  - logical end value,equal 275
  - logical start value,equal 275
  - physical end value,equal 276
  - physical start value,equal 276
  - size value,equal 276

- sort alphabetically 267
- sort by address 267
- user-defined 353
- symbol table
  - add 275
  - information 316
  - new 286

## T

- tabs directive 254
- tan function 166
- tanh function 167
- task entries 292
- title directive 255
- tolower function 168
- toupper function 169
- translate executable images 306

## U

- uninitialized variables 64
- unreachable code
  - eliminate 11
- uppercase mnemonic 45

## V

- va\_arg macro 170
- va\_end function 172
- va\_start macro 174
- variable
  - length argument list 172, 174
- VLE
  - family 181
- volatile
  - data 36
  - memory mapped control registers 36
  - qualifier 36
  - using keyword 36
- vprintf function 176
- vsprintf function 177

---

## W

warnings 64, 355

widen

    argument 170

    to int 170

window

    set shift 267, 318

    size 270

## X

xdef directive 256, 257

xref directive 256, 257

PRELIMINARY

